# TECHNICAL PRODUCT CATALOGUE 2021

Awnings Pergola awnings Patio roofs Glasoasen<sup>®</sup> Glazing elements



Always up-to-date at: www.weinorpartner.com

weinor

Awnings Patio roofs Glasoasen®



.



A









We constantly update this product catalogue. You can always find the latest information in our download centre:.

Download PDF: www.weinorpartner.com Catalog to browse: www.weinor.com/weinorProductcatalogue

Version december 2020

Λ1	Folding arm awnings		
UI	Kubata/LED	15	01
	Opal Design II/LED	43	
	Semina Life/LED	65	
	Cassita II/LED	89	
	I/K/N 2000	109	
	Semina	129	02
	Topas	149	
07	Pergola awnings		
UΖ	Plaza Viva/LED	169	
	Plaza Viva with VertiTex II	203	0.2
	weinor PergoTex II/LED	213	03
07	Window, vertical and		
<b>U</b> 3	side screens		
	VertiTex II window and vertical awning	261	
	Paravento side screen	295	04
01	Conservatory/roof awnings		
<b>U</b> 4	WGM Top	309	
	Sottezza II/LED	335	
<b>0F</b>	Stand-alone awnings		05
05		250	
•••		500	
06	Patio roofs		
	Terrazza Pure	377	
	Terrazza Sempra   Terrazza Sempra Plus	425	06
	Terrazza Originale   Terrazza Originale Plus	465	
<b>Λ7</b>	Glazing elements (GE)		
U/	Full glazing elements   Glass sliding door w17 easy	513	
	Frame elements   Fixed glazing w50-c	527	07
00	Accessories		
υð	LED lighting   Tempura heating system	535	
00	Controls and Motor Drives		
UY	Radio controls   Wired control units	549	08
	Motor drives   Gear drives		
	Please note individual market availabilities		
	Thease note mulvidual market availabilities.		

4

#### Notes:

We reserve the right to make technical changes as well as changes in range and product portfolio. For technical reasons, the colours may appear slightly different when printed. The detailed technical illustrations of weinor products shown in this product catalogue are not always 100% true to the original..

09

6

7

8

# Successful together Benefit from the strong services of a strong brand!

weinor started in Cologne in 1960 as a small and inventive artisan company. That was a long time ago! Today we are the market leader for weather protection for outdoor spaces with production sites in Cologne and Möckern near Magdeburg. One crucial component for this success is you, as a weinor retailer and partner. Which is why it is important to offer you comprehensive support for the sales of our products in all areas.





# Award-winning design

Numerous design awards bear testimony to our commitment to provide good designs:



Kubata cassette-awning, 2019 w17 easy full glass sliding door, 2018 Opal Design II and Cassita II cassette-awnings, 2014



Kubata cassette-awning, 2019 Terraza Pure cubic glass patio roof, 2019 VertiTex II vertical-awning, 2019 (Special Mention) w17 easy full glass sliding door, 2018 Opal Design II cassette-awning, 2014 (Special Mention)



Terrazza Pure cubic glass patio roof, 2019

More information at: weinor.com/awards



Plaza Viva pergola awning, 2019



Tempura Quadra heating system, 2018 w17 easy full glass sliding door, 2017 Semina Life cassette-awning, 2016 Cassita II cassette-awning, 2014 Terrazza Glasoase® cold roof conservatory, 2009



Cassita II cassette-awning, 2014



w17 easy full glass sliding door, 2017 weinor PergoTex II pergola awning, 2016 Sottezza II conservatory awning, 2015



weinor PergoTex II pergola awning, 2016



weinor PergoTex II pergola awning, 2016



w17 easy full glass sliding door, 2017 Sottezza II conservatory awning, 2017



Sottezza II conservatory awning, 2016

# Top weinor quality for certain



**Premium quality** 

made in Germany  $\bigcirc \bigcirc ($ 

weinor

CERTIFICATE OF

Most definitely an original product



Embodying innovation – constant enhancements Tried and tested weinor quality - certified production processes, top standards Sustainability and responsibility – high environmental standards and regular checks

#### weinor certificate of authenticity

Every weinor product is delivered with a certificate of authenticity. Ask your retailer and partner for it!

Important: Fabric qualities: weinor awning fabrics meet strict quality requirements and are produced using state-of-the-art production technology. Despite this, blemishes like creases, rippling in the seam and hem area, overstretching in the hem area and honeycombing cannot be ruled out. This has no negative impact on the quality and operating life and are not a reason for rejection. For more detailed information:

www.weinor.com/fabric\_qualities

Awnings and conservatory awnings: must be retracted during rain and windy conditions – other-wise there is a risk of water pooling on the fabric. Fabrics that are allowed to become wet may show creasing, wrinkling or honeycombing as well as having visible water stains. Mould and mildew damage is also a possibility. If taken away wet the awning should be extended as soon as possible once there are dry conditions

Frame colours: depending on the frame colour ordered, we deliver all small parts, as well as gear handles and gear boxes in black (similar to RAL 9005), white (similar to RAL 9016), or in grey (similar to weinor 7319).

Patio roofs and Glasoasen®:

Ask a qualified retailer and partner about the causes of condensation formation and any cracking sounds which may occasionally be heard (and how to avoid them from the planning stage onwards)

# weinorshop.com The best online support for greater success





**Tip:** Use the e-shop on mobile devices too. You can generate quotes and place orders immediately using a laptop or tablet, even when you are with the customer!

tel producti		DURING MELICITION
and the second second	a test test to	
And and a second second	Contraction of the	
and the local division of	Concession Property	100000
States of States and	Tenantine in the second	And the other days.
	And a set of the set o	America -
		inema-
Sectors interest		100
		-

# Faster, more affordable, more secure: order through weinorshop.com

You can really easily configure the products you want and order the required components through the weinor e-shop.

#### Your benefits at a glance:

#### **NEW!** Respond quickly with weinor e-offer

Create cost estimates for your customers quickly and conveniently using our e-offer – directly from the weinor e-shop.

#### **NEW!** Visualisation using weinor 3D image

Display your customers' property realistically using the new visualisation integrated into the E-Shop.

**NEW! Numerous spare parts can be ordered** For example, replacement motors for all weinor

awnings can be entered in the E-Shop from now on.

#### Additional cash discount

When online ordering is combined with payment by direct debit additional discount is available.

#### 24-hour service

Enter your orders around the clock. Production starts immediately after the order is released.

#### **Fast checking**

Errors are virtually ruled out: the system instantly checks and confirms your configuration for technical producibility.

#### **Rapid processing**

Online orders are processed faster.

#### Constantly updated data

Everything up to date: you can update the information such as your billing or delivery address yourself.

#### **Reliable installation planning**

You instantly receive an expected delivery date with confirmation of the order.

#### **Free extras**

When you order the Terrazza through e-shop you get the leaf guard, post plates/covers and outlet drainage accessories free of charge.

# Patented

Welnor

3

# **Full innovation ahead**

The weinor development team work unswervingly to create a competitive advantage for our partners, with clever product ideas. Around **270 patents** since the company was founded, including the weinor carriage system and in-house developed rope tension technology, are testament to our claim to **innovation leadership**. Here are just a few examples:



# Reliable rope tension system for conservatory awnings

The reliable rope tension system ensures even fabric deployment as well as fast and easy installation with weinor conservatory awnings.

- Textile rope from open ocean sailing technology, break and strain resistant, tried-and-tested for many years, no elongation
- Long-lasting equalised fabric tautness with pulley block technology



# weinor carriage system for conservatory awnings – precise and quiet

The tried and proven weinor carriage impresses with its exceptionally easy and quiet extension and retraction.

• Plastic precision rollers for reduced rolling friction



#### weinor LongLife arm for weinor awnings – durable and quiet

The weinor LongLife arm features an exceptionally robust high-tech belt.

- Tested to more than 100,000 cycles
- Extremely quiet operation
- No maintenance required
- Drop forged aluminium in joint light but highly robust



#### Patented weinor Opti-Flow-System<sup>®</sup> for optimised fabric positioning with weinor awnings

A well positioned fabric needs a straight roller tube. weinor solves this challenge with a floating fabric roller bearing. As a result, the fabric and roller tube are supported along the entire length when rolling it up and unrolling it from the bottom of the cassette and glide profile.

- The fabric positioning is ideal even for fabrics up to 6 metres wide (max. 15 m<sup>2</sup>)
- Specially coated glide profile means the fabric enjoys long-lasting protection

# The **fabric** makes the awning

Breathtakingly beautiful and long-lasting: our wide range of fabric patterns brings a cosy atmosphere outdoors – strictly according to your individual taste.

# Attractive awning fabrics to suit every taste



my collections, weinor's new fabric range consists of 3 different colour ways with a total of 143 patterns in total.

weinor fabrics are made from polyester or acrylic and are spinneret dyed. This guarantees outstanding durability, consistently radiant colours and great UV resistance.

Thanks to the Teflon fabric coating, the surface is resistant to oil, water, dirt and prevents rot.

my collections is also impressive in terms of environmental compatibility. The fabrics do not contain any substances harmful to health and they meet all the required environmental standards.

#### Sustainable & exclusive to weinor



The weinor modern basics blue® fabric collection includes 16 modern patterns in tried and tested weinor polyester quality. 85% recycled PET is used to produce the fabric.

# Vertical sun protection with a crystal-clear view



weinor external screens effectively protect both the indoors and outdoor spaces from overheating, whilst giving superb sun protection. They can also offer privacy from prying eyes. We recommend the screens by weinor<sup>®</sup> collection for this application.

It includes four different, high-quality fabrics, StarScreen, Perluca, Soltis® and fibreglass screen. They all offer perfect sun protection and privacy for windows, the patio and balconies. Different degrees of transparency and how much air is let through are possible, depending on requirements.

Note: Soltis® fabrics are not available for VertiTex II Zip.

#### Fabrics for weinor PergoTex II



Pergona<sup>®</sup> is the collection for the weinor PergoTex II pergola awnings. Choose between Pergona<sup>®</sup> classic and Pergona<sup>®</sup> transluzent.







momentum, mélange and not crazy. Choose your favourite pattern from the 3 well selected colour ways. Whether it's timeless neutral, harmonious or creative trends – we have the right material and matching colour for every taste.





# Over 200 modern frame colours

Colour manufacturers make every effort to guarantee colour stability. Despite this, as a result of the ban on the use of heavy metals in powder coatings, it therefore cannot be excluded that colours in general, and Fire Red (RAL 3000) in particular, may fade with time.



Maximum colour safety: weinor has over 200 different frame colours for you to choose from. You can choose from diverse colours which harmonise with the architecture.

#### Identical colours – for a perfect match

As weinor does all the powder coating in its own workshop, you can also rest assured that different weinor products come with the same top-class colour tonality and identical gloss level.

# Choose from an abundance of high-quality colours:

- 47 standard RAL rack colours, silk gloss
- 9 scratchproof, resistant trend colours with an elegant textured look (standard)
- over 150 special RAL colours



# Folding arm awnings



**Cassette awning** 

# Kubata Kubata LED

Cubic shapes are a popular style element for contemporary facades. The **Kubata** cassette awning blends ideally into these. With its clear design it complements modern architecture perfectly. But the high-quality technology is also impressive: LED spotlights integrated into the cassette, the weinor LongLife arm, convenient control and large choice of fabrics and colours – leaving nothing to be desired.

**Cubic, clean lines:** modern, clear design with no visible fixings



Removable cover caps: easy access for cabling the controls

weinor Opti-Flow-System® and support profile: optimum fabric positioning



**Simple installation** with wall bracket and carrier bar



**LED lighting:** integrated into the cassette



# Kubata Highlights





**Reliable drainage:** no ingress of rainwater



weinor LongLife arm: durable and quiet



Easy mounting front profile end cap: no visible fixings and integrated water drainage outlet

Wind lock safety device: well sheltered even in winds



2 versions:



cassette with back plate



casssette without back plate

# Kubata Benefits



#### Cubic, clean lines – modern contemporary design

The Kubata's Opti-Flow-System<sup>®</sup> from weinor is fitted with a support profile across the whole width of the awning that ensures optimum fabric positioning.



#### Kubata LED – cassette with integrated **LED** lighting

The LED spotlights integrated into the cassette produce atmospheric lighting on the patio:

- 30,000 LED light hours with lowest energy consumption (85% electricity saving compared to halogen technology)
- LED infinitely dimmable using weinor's BiConnect control



Reliable drainage - rainwater is drained off in a controlled way

Figure 1: Penetrating rainwater is discharged laterally. This protects the cloth from moisture.

Figure 2: If the cloth is retracted in the wet state, the residual water runs off laterally over the channel.

Figure 1



#### Removable cover caps – easier access for the receiver/cable connections

The cover caps on both sides can be removed using the clip technology. As a result, it is very easy to disconnect the drive and controls and it is easier to carry out maintenance work.



#### Wind lock safety device - well-sheltered even in winds

Proven technology prevents the awning from lifting up when wind gusts from below:

- Tilting folding arm with wind lock safety device
- Proven, maintenance-free technology
- Forged and extruded aluminium components

# Kubata Technology

Kubata versions	Kubata	Kubata LED
Technology		
Max. width	700/650 cm	700/650 cm
Max. projection	300/400 cm	300/400 cm
Cassette size (W x H) incl. standard bracket	210 mm x 205 mm	210 mm x 205 mm
Gear drive	<ul> <li>(1-unit system, with a max. width of 600 cm/max. projection of 350 cm)</li> </ul>	_
Motor drive	• as standard	• as standard
Angle of pitch on awning	5° to 40°	5° to 40°
Installation alternatives	can be installed on walls, ceilings and rafters	
LED lighting (separate spotlights)	-	• integrated in bottom profile
OptiNut roller tube	as standard	• as standard
LongLife arm	• as standard	• as standard
Accessories		
Tempura Quadra heating system	0	0
BiSens Agido-3V product protection sensor	0	0
Controls		
Radio control	0	0
No remote	•	•
Weather sensors		
Sun/wind sensor BiConnect BiSens SW-230 V	0	0
Sun/wind sensor solar powered BiConnect BiSens SW-Solar+	0	0
Sun/wind/rain sensor BiConnect BiSens SWR-230V	0	0
Quality		

Tested up to

wind resistance class 2 according to DIN 13561 (wind strength 5 on the Beaufort scale)

• Standard Option — Not available

#### Weight table

Width	Projection in cm							
in cm	150	200	250	300	350	400		
	Weigl	nt in kg						
200	46							
250	54	56						
300	61	63	66					
350	68	70	74	79				
400	76	78	81	86	90			
450	83	85	88	94	98	106		
500	90	92	96	101	105	114		
550	99	101	105	110	113	122		
600	106	109	113	118	124	130		
650	114	116	120	125	131	137		
700	124	127	130	139	_	_		

weinor professional tips:

Scan the QR code



or view or download them online at: www.weinorpartner.com/weinor-professionaltips/kubata now. 01

# Kubata LED



# LED lighting – 30,000 hours of lighting with lowest energy consumption

Select LED components for top weinor quality:

- Atmospheric light thanks to special glass lenses
- Visually integrated into the cassette\*
- Lighting remains on even when awning is retracted
- Highly energy-efficient
- Operating life of 30,000 hours
- Infinitely dimmable when used with BiConnect radio control
- Easy to service: replace individual LED lights just by dismounting the bottom profile

\* Cassette bottom section with integrated LED lights is not assembled.



#### **Integrated LED lighting**

Width	Projection in cm								
in cm	100	150	200	250	300	350	400		
	Number of	LED spotlig	hts						
200	3	3							
250	3 - 4	3 - 4	4						
300	4	4	4	4 - 5					
350	6 - 7	6 - 7	6 - 7	5 - 7	5 - 7				
400	7 - 8	7 - 8	7 - 8	7 - 8	6 - 8	6 - 8			
450	8 - 9	8 - 9	8 - 9	8 - 9	8 - 9	7 - 9	7 - 9		
500	9	9	9	9	9	9	8 - 10		
550	9 - 10	9 - 10	9 - 10	9 - 10	9 - 10	9 - 10	9 - 10		
600	10 - 11	10 - 11	10 - 11	10 - 11	10 - 11	10 - 11	10 - 11		
650	11 - 12	11 - 12	11 - 12	11 - 12	11 - 12	11 - 12	11 - 12		
700	12	12	12	12	12				

The LED spotlights are distributed automatically depending on the width/projection/ type of bracket.

This table shows the LED distribution with standard arm or bracket positions combined with the 85 mm wall bracket.

# Kubata Controls

### Easily accessible location for receivers/controls



**Receiver, power supply pack and further electrical components (e.g. BiConnect receiver in the cassette)** The cover cap **1** can be opened for servicing purposes. The drive can be disconnected from the receiver and controlled independently from this.

### weinor BiConnect radio technology

Product	Electronics	BiConnect control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
Kubata	Kubata drive	• BiRec receiver	BiRec MA-K	<ul> <li>BiEasy 1M/5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>BiEasy App</li> <li>1MW-3V wall transmitter</li> </ul>
Kubata LED	Kubata drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>BiRec combi-receiver for main drive and LED (with integrated power supply pack)</li> <li>Dimmable LED</li> </ul>	BiRec MLED	<ul> <li>BiEasy 5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>BiEasy App</li> </ul>
Accessories (optional)	Tempura Quadra heating	<ul> <li>Dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Accommodation of receiver in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	BiRec HD	<ul> <li>BiEasy 5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>BiEasy App</li> </ul>

Requires: awnings with BiConnect remote control and sensors require a BiEasy 1M, 5M or 15M Go!

### Kubata Controls

# Somfy io-homecontrol<sup>®</sup> radio technology

Product	Electronics	Somfy io-homecontrol control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
Kubata	Kubata drive	<ul> <li>io-homecontrol integrated in remote- controlled motor</li> </ul>	Somfy io remote-controlled motor	<ul> <li>Situo 1 io Pure II/Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 io Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>
Kubata LED	Kubata drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>io-homecontrol integrated in remote- controlled motor</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for the LED spot- lights (with downstream power supply pack) integrated into cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	Somfy io remote-controlled motor and io Lighting Receiver Variation on/off	Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter
Accessories (optional)	Tempura Quadra heating	<ul> <li>Not dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Accommodation of receiver in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	Heating Slim Receiver on/off io 2KW STAS3/STAK3	<ul> <li>Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 io Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>

# Somfy RTS radio technology

Product	Electronics	Somfy RTS control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
Kubata	Kubata drive	RTS control integrated in remote-controlled motor	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor	<ul> <li>Situo 1 RTS Pure II/Situo 1 Soliris RTS Pure II/Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 RTS Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>
Kubata LED	Kubata drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>RTS control integrated in remote-controlled motor</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for the LED spot- lights (with downstream power supply pack) integrated into cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor and RTS lighting receiver	Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter
Accessories (optional)	Tempura Quadra heating	<ul> <li>Not dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Accommodation of receiver in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	Heating Slim Receiver RTS Plug	Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter



Note:

Please see the "Accessories" technical brochure for further details regarding the drive and control.

Some options are subject to a surcharge. For prices, please refer to the weinor awnings price list.

### Hard wired with Somfy control

Product	Electronics	Firmly wired Somfy control	Controls
Kubata	Kubata drive	Somfy control for awning drive	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno
Kubata LED	Kubata drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy control for awning drive</li> <li>Switch on site for the LED spotlights</li> <li>LED power supply pack integrated into the cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno and suitable light switch (on site)
Accessories (optional)	Tempura Quadra heating	Not dimmable	Suitable switch (on site)

### Hard wired (switch/control on site)

Product	Electronics	Hard wired control	Controls
Kubata	Kubata drive	Awning switch for the awning drive	e.g. Double rocker switches (on site)
Kubata LED	Kubata drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Awning switch for the awning drive</li> <li>Switch on site for the LED spotlights</li> <li>LED power supply pack integrated into the cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	e.g. Double rocker switch and suitable light switch (on site)
Accessories (optional)	Tempura Quadra heating	Not dimmable	Suitable switch (on site)

# Gear drive (optional)



The Kubata can of course be extended and retracted using a gear handle too (1-unit system, with a max. width of 600 cm/max. projection of 350 cm). This option is recommended whenever it is hard to connect to an electrical power source on the site or if the awning is not frequently used.

- The Kubata has a universal bevel gear system
- Tested according to DIN EN 14203
- Freewheel device when extended



Standard gear outlet

01

### Kubata Controls

### Regulating the front profile



Two stop eccentric tappets are installed on each side of the Kubata. They are used to regulate or adjust the closing position. This gives the awning cassette a visually harmonious overall look.



### Tempura Quadra heating system (option)



# The perfect combination: Kubata with Tempura Quadra heating system and BiConnect\*

#### Please note:

The Tempura Quadra angle of pitch is restricted to 15° as standard (this restriction is to avoid the wall being heated up too much by the Tempura). The grub screw, which restricts the angle of pitch, can be removed if the Kubata is pitched up to 10° at the most. Then it is possible to adjust the Tempura Quadra's angle of pitch up to 30°.





#### Site measurements – determining the projection and head clearance height

- Find the projection by looking in the "Projection" table for the terrace depth.
- Using the projection from the table and the required angle of inclination, consult the "head clearance height" table for the head clearance height. This head clearance height refers to an installation height of 300 cm.
- Add/subtract the difference between 300 cm and the actual installation height to/from the head clearance height in the table.

#### Determining the projection

Pitch angle	Patio depth in cm						
	150	200	250	300	350	400	
5°	161	211	261	311	361	400	
15°	165	217	269	321	372	400	
25°	176	231	286	341	396	400	

Projection in cm (rounded figures)

This table can be used to find the awning projection for any given horizontal patio depth. Please note

that the awning projection is possible in 10 cm increments so this has to be rounded up or down.

#### Determining the head clearance height

Pitch angle	Projection in cm							
	150	200	250	300	350	400		
5°	272	268	263	259	254	250		
15°	246	233	220	207	194	181		
25°	222	200	179	158	137	116		

Head clearance height in cm (rounded figures)

This table is used to find the head clearance heights for various projections when the angle of pitch is  $5^{\circ}$ ,  $15^{\circ}$  or  $25^{\circ}$ .

This table is based on the example of an installation height of 300 cm (edge of awning).

### Wall bracket

#### Sizes and bracket recommendations

Width	Projection in cm													
in cm	150	160-200	210-250	260-300 Projection only in 10 cm steps				<b>310-350</b> Projection only in 10 cm steps					360-400	
				260	270	280	290	300	310	320	330	340	350	
200	2													
201-250	2	2												
251-300	2	2	2											
301-350	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2						
351-400	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	
401-450	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
451-500	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	2+1	2+1	2+1	2+1	2+1	2+1	2+1
501-550	3	3	3	3	3	3	2+1	2+1	2+1	2+1	2+1	2+1	2+1	2+1
551-600	3	3	3	3	3	2+1	2+1	2+1	2+1	2+1	2+1	2+1	2+1	2+1
601-650	3	3	3	3	2+1	2+1	2+1	2+1	2+1	2+1	2+1	2+1	2+1	2+1
651-700	3	3	3	2+1	2+1	2+1	2+1	2+1						



**Installation on C20/25 concrete walls** with a casing of up to 200 mm, wind resistance class 2 and a permissible centric tensile load for anchor bolts of 5.71 kN. 2 x wallbracket 85 mm
3 x wallbracket 85 mm
2 x wallbracket 295 mm
2 x wallbracket 295 mm + 1 x wallbracket 85 mm

### Position of wall brackets and Kubata cassette

#### Wall bracket 85 mm outside (KS1)



### Position of wall brackets and Kubata cassette

#### Wall bracket 85 mm inside (KS2)



#### Wall bracket 295 mm



Notes: KS1 = outside bracket KS2 = inside bracket KS3 = centre bracket

### Position of wall brackets and Kubata cassette



#### Wall bracket 260 mm on both sides (KS1 and KS2)

#### Wall bracket 260 mm outside (KS1)



#### Wall bracket 260 mm inside (KS2)



Notes: KS1 = outside bracket KS2 = inside bracket KS3 = centre bracket With the LED option only one 260 mm wall bracket per arm is possible.

#### Installation allowances



House walls are never totally straight. Which is why there is an automatic compensation function between the bottom profile and back plate with the Kubata. Up to 4 mm can be compensated for straight and the front profile closes perfectly as a result. A maximum 4 mm shift can be produced on the movable transition between the bottom profile and back plate using this function. It is necessary to align the cassette ideally.

as a result. This guarantees that the awning cassette is



**Detail A:** The tolerance of the brackets around the arm joint is a maximum of 2 mm. **Detail B:** The outer brackets tolerance is a maximum of 4 mm.

### Minimum spacing distances for installation in the niche (wall mounting)



#### Installation in a row

When installing the Kubata in a row, it should be ensured that the brackets of both awnings are installed either internally or externally. In this way, the housing closes flush onto the wall. If an awning with inner brackets and one with outer brackets is installed, a slight offset of the housing can occur when retracted, depending on the arm position and the surface.



#### Mounting on pressure-resistant/non-pressure-resistant surface

#### Punched hole A (used when mounting with 100 x 180 x 15 mm base plates)

Punched hole A is the standard version and is used for pressure-resistant surfaces. In combination with the 100 x 180 x 15 mm base plates for reinforcement, this version can also be used for non-pressure-resistant surfaces (insulated facades, EIFS).





Wall bracket with base plate



Wall bracket 85 mm



Ceiling bracket

Rafter bracket

#### Punched hole B (used when mounting without 100 x 180 x 15 mm base plates)

Punched hole B is required on a non-pressure-resistant surface without 100 x 180 x 15 mm base plate. It is not suitable for mounting ceiling brackets, ceiling angles, rafter brackets and mounting plates.





Wall bracket without base plate



Wall bracket 85 mm

### **Cross-section**

#### Kubata LED



Wall bracket
 Roof profile
 Fabric roller bearing
 Fabric rolls
 Spring-tensioned arm



01

# Kubata Support Profile



Kubata: support profile across the whole width of the awning

The weinor Opti-Flow-System<sup>®</sup> and support profile across the whole width of the awning ensure optimum fabric positioning.



Housing bracket
 Cassette
 Fabric roller bearing
 Fabric rolls
 Support profile
 Glide profile



Kubata centre bracket: wall mounting (rear view)



Kubata centre bracket: roof mounting (rear view)



Kubata centre bracket: rafter mounting with rafter bracket (rear view)

### Wall mounting – brackets



Wall bracket





85 mm wall bracket





295 mm wall bracket (arm enclosure)









# Wall mounting – brackets



260 mm wall bracket





15





#### Baseplate (100 x 180 x 15 mm)







Baseplate, untreated (75 x 178 x 4 mm)



# Wall mounting – mounting plates



Mounting plate 660 x 300 x 15 mm





Position of the mounting plates using the Kubata 500 x 300 cm\* as an example.



Mounting plate 660 x 390 x 15 mm



Position of the mounting plates using the Kubata 500 x 300 cm\* as an example.



\* Depending on the width of the awning, the positioning of the mounting plates may vary.



Mounting plate 250 x 290 x 15 mm





# Wall mounting – mounting plates



Mounting plate 450 x 200 x 30 mm



Position of the mounting plates using the Kubata 500 x 300 cm\* as an example.





Mounting plate 640 x 200 x 30 mm



Position of the mounting plates using the Kubata 500 x 300 cm\* as an example.



\* Depending on the width of the awning, the positioning of the mounting plates may vary.
### Kubata Installation

## **Ceiling mounting**



Ceiling bracket





Ceiling bracket







### Kubata Installation

### **Rafter mounting**



013

The extraction force is the force with which the weight of the awning and the wind load pull on each upper fixing. The tables indicate this force in N per upper fixing. It varies depending on the awning size and the wall bracket /mounting plate used.

Selecting the wall bracket and anchoring system:

1. Consult relevant table for extraction force per fixing for selected awning size.

2. Select a wall bracket/mounting plate for which there is fixing material which can resist the indicated extraction force. Remember to take into account the spacing, the area which will be damaged if the fixing breaks out, the type of fixing material used and the mounting base.

See separate bracket overview for other bases.

#### Ceiling installation (on C20/25 concrete)

Extraction forces in N for ceiling mounting

Please note the limitations of number of brackets per arm depending on width/projection.

Width	Projection in cm								
in cm	150	200	250	300	350	400			
200	1022								
250	1219	1794							
300	1417	2084	2920						
350	1615	2375	3318	4453					
400	1812	2665	3717	4975	3155				
450	2015	2960	4120	5503	3488	4877			
500	2155	3193	4461	2999	4227	5325			
550	2349	3479	4855	3259	4601	5790			
600	2542	3764	5249	3898	4975	6255			
650	2735	4050	5644	4190	5349	6720			
700	2928	4336	6655	4482					

Taking into account the width/projection limitations, two brackets per arm can be used instead of one per arm. This halves the specified extraction forces. Does not apply to the sizes framed in red on the table above.



F = force



1x ceiling bracket including 1x wall bracket 85 mm per arm

2x ceiling bracket including 2x wall bracket 85 mm per arm Number of fixings: 4 or 8

#### Please note:

or

from a width of 451cm 1 x additional ceiling and wall bracket incl. as centre bracket is required. This means an additional 2 fixings will be required.

**Installation on C20/25 concrete walls** with a casing of up to 200 mm, wind resistance class 2 and a permissible centric tensile load for anchor bolts of 5.71 kN.

## Please note the width/projection limitations for number of brackets per arm.

Width	Projection in cm							
in cm	150	200	250	300	350	400		
	1496							
200	748							
	499							
	1789	2625						
250	894	1312						
	596	875						
	2081	3051	4261					
300	1040	1526	2130					
	694	1017	1420					
	2373	3478	4843	6475				
350	1187	1739	2421	3237				
	791	1159	1614	2158				
	2666	3904	5425	7234	4559			
400	1333	1952	2713	3617	2279			
	889	1301	1808	2411	3039			
450	2958	4331	6007	7994	5038	7045		
	1479	2165	3004	3997	2519	3522		
	986	1444	2002	2665	3359	4697		
	3250	4758	6590	4377	6158	7719		
500	1625	2379	3295	2188	3079	3860		
	1083	1586	2197	2918	4105	5146		
	3543	5184	7172	4756	6703	8394		
550	1771	2592	3586	2378	3351	4197		
	1181	1728	2391	3171	4469	5596		
	3835	5611	7754	5713	7248	9069		
600	1918	2805	3877	2857	3624	4534		
	1278	1870	2585	3809	4832	6046		
650	4127	6037	8337	6142	7793	9743		
	2064	3019	4168	3071	3897	4872		
	1376	2012	2779	4095	5196	6495		
	4420	6464	9878	6571				
700	2210	3232	4939	3286				
	1473	2155	3293	4381				

Taking into account the width/projection limitations, two brackets per arm can be used instead of one per arm. This halves the specified extraction forces.

Does not apply to the sizes framed in red on the table above.

Does not apply to wall bracket 295 mm.



1x wall bracket 260 mm per arm or

2x wall bracket 260 mm per arm Number of fixings: 8 or 16

1x wall bracket 295 mm per arm Number of fixings: 12

#### Please note:

**from a width of 451cm** 1 x additional wall bracket as centre bracket is required. This means an additional 2 fixings will be required.

per arm

per arm

15 mm

required

30 mm

#### Wall mounting on C20/25 concrete with up to 200 mm of facing (non pressure resistance surface)

Brackets with mounting plate

Extraction force in N per upper fixing material of wall bracket Please note the width/projection limitations for number of

1x mounting plate 640x200x30 including 1x wall bracket 85 mm per arm or 1x mounting plate 640x200x30 including 2x wall bracket 85 mm per arm Number of fixings: 24 1x mounting plate 640x280x15 including 1x wall bracket 85 mm per arm or 1x mounting plate 640x280x15 including 2x wall bracket 85 mm per arm Number of fixings: 12 1x mounting plate 640 x 370 x 15 including 1x wall bracket 85 mm per arm or 1x mounting plate 640 x 370 x 15 including 2x wall bracket 85 mm per arm Number of fixings: 12 Please note: from 451 cm width is additional - for mounting plates with a thickness of 1x shim plate 100 x 180 x 15 incl. 1x wall bracket 85 mm as centre console - for mounting plates with a thickness of 2x shim plates 100 x 180 x 15 incl. 1x wall bracket 85 mm as centre console required. The number of fixings increases by 2.

#### **Rafter mounting**

Shear forces in N for rafter mounting

Please note the width/projection limitations for number of brackets per arm.

Rafter brackets are available as both left and right handed

1x rafter bracket including 1x wall bracket 85 mm per arm



or 2x rafter bracket including 2x wall bracket 85 mm per arm **Applies to two brackets per arm on a rafter.** 



1x rafter bracket including 1x wall bracket 85 mm per arm or

2x rafter bracket including 2x wall bracket 85 mm per arm Applies to two brackets per arm, each with separate rafters.

1x rafter bracket with mounting plate including 1x wall bracket 85 mm per arm or

2x rafter bracket with 2x mounting plate including 2x wall bracket 85 mm per arm **Applies to two brackets per arm on a rafter.** 

1x rafter bracket with mounting plate including 1x wall bracket 85 mm per arm or

2x rafter bracket with 2x mounting plate including 2x wall bracket 85 mm per arm Applies to two brackets per arm, each with separate rafters.

#### Please note:

**from 451 cm width** 1x rafter bracket incl. 1x wall bracket 85 as centre bracket is additionally required.

Width	Projection in cm						
in cm	150	200	250	300	350	400	
	1442						
200	1442						
	636						
	636						
	1721	2508					
250	1721	2508					
250	756	1075					
	756	1075					
	1999	2913	4054				
	1999	2913	4054				
300	877	1246	1708				
	877	1246	1708				
	2278	3319	4607	6151			
	2278	3319	4607	6151			
350	997	1418	1939	2564			
	997	1418	1939	2564			
	2557	3724	5160	6872	8663		
	2557	3724	5160	6872	4332		
400	1118	1590	2171	2863	3587		
	1118	1590	2171	2863	1794		
	2841	4134	5718	7598	9578	13369	
	28/1	/13/	5718	7598	/789	6685	
450	12/1/	1767	2/07	3167	3968	5501	
	1244	1767	2407	3167	198/	2751	
	3062	//82	6213	8262	11621	1/1590	
	3062	4482	6213	/131	5811	7295	
500	1307	1881	2581	3/09	4767	5968	
	1307	1881	2501	1705	2384	2084	
	3337	/1883	6761	8978	126/19	15865	
	3337	4005	6761	4489	6325	7033	
550	1/22	2048	2808	3704	5188	6/89	
	1423	2048	2808	1852	2504	3245	
	3611	5284	7310	10760	13677	17130	
	3611	5284	7310	5380	6830	8570	
600	1530	2216	3035	4430	5609	7009	
	1539	2210	2025	2215	2805	2505	
	2002	5695	7050	11569	14706	19/17	
	2002	5605	7050	579/	7252	0207	
650	1655	7383	3262	4762	6030	7530	
	1655	2305	3202	7201	2015	2765	
	4160	2303	0202	12276	2012	5705	
	4100	6006	9200 020E	6100			
700	4100	2550	9200	5004			
	1771	2350	2044	25094			
		2550	3844	2547			

Taking into account the width/projection limitations, two brackets per arm can be used instead of one per arm. This halves the specified extraction forces. Does not apply to the sizes framed in red on the table above.

Applies only to two brackets per arm on separate rafters each!





**Cassette awning** 

# **Opal Design II Opal Design II** LED | Valance Plus | LED Valance Plus

The **Opal Design II** cassette awning stands out for its timeless, classic design hand in hand with groundbreaking weinor technology. Made to shade large areas, it blends in harmoniously with its surrounding architecture, the attractive shape of the cassette adding a sophisticated element. A wide range of tempting and practical optional extras make it easy to operate and wonderfully convenient while also extending its lifetime.



Wind lock safety device: The ultramodern technology prevents the awning from lifting up when wind gusts from below

**End cap closure:** Unique and safe closing mechanism

> **Mounting options:** Installation on walls, ceilings and rafters is possible



Rafter mounting

**Opal Design II LED (optional):** Integrated lighting



# **Opal Design II** Highlights



Awning cassette: Classic design with the latest technology **Versions:** Valance Plus



Multi-section units



weinor LongLife arm: Very durable and low-noise



# **Opal Design II** Benefits



# Cassette awning – classic design with the latest technology

Classic, timeless design plus superior high-tech elements are united in the top-class weinor Opal Design II awning.

- Cassette is just 16 cm high: particularly flat, attractive shape
- Smart cassette design for the utmost stability and safety



# End cap closure – unique and safe closing mechanism

If you can see that the crescent-shaped caps at the sides of the drop profile are closed then the awning is reliably protected against damp and dirt.

- Unique, patented weinor technology
- The only awning on the market with this USP



# LEDs and Valance Plus – integrated lighting and vertical protection

The Opal Design II LED variant adds integrated "warm light" LED lighting to the awning

- Individual LED spotlights integrated into awning cassette
- Infinitely dimmable when used with BiConnect radio control The Opal Design II Valance Plus option provides vertical protection against the sun and prying eyes.
- Attractive fabric combinations
- Patented weinor OptiFlow-System<sup>®</sup> to keep fabric ideally positioned and to close the drop profile safely

#### **Opal Design II** Benefits



## Multi-section units – to shade especially large areas

The Opal Design II also comes as a combined multi-section unit for very large terraces.

- As a 2-part unit up to 1,200 cm
- Jockey cover: easy to fit
- Coupled version not possible with Valance Plus



# Wind lock safety device – reliable protection

The ultramodern technology prevents the awning from lifting up when wind gusts from below.

- Patented wind lock safety device
- Via a tilting member, the drop profile and awning arm are tilted when ascending
- Proven, maintenance-free technology
- All components made of forged and extruded aluminium



#### weinor LongLife Arm – durable, quiet operation

The weinor LongLife arm features an exceptionally robust high-tech belt.

- Tested to more than 100,000 cycles
- Extremely quiet operation
- No maintenance required
- Drop forged aluminium in joint light but highly robust

# **Opal Design II** Technology

Versions of Opal Design II	Opal Design II	Opal Design II LED
Technology		
Max. width, 1-section/2-section with jockey cover	650 cm/1,200 cm	650 cm/1,200 cm
Max. projection	400 cm	400 cm
Cassette size (w x h) incl. standard bracket	265 mm x 172 mm	265 mm x 172 mm
Coupled systems	0	0
Gear drive	0	-
Motor drive	• as standard	as standard
Angle of pitch on awning	5° – 40° (with projection from 351 cm 7° to 40°)	5° – 40° (with projection from 351 cm 7° to 40°)
Installation alternatives	Can be installed on walls, ceilings and rafters	5
LED lighting (separate spotlights)	-	• integrated into the awning's cassette
Patented weinor Opti-Flow-System®	• as standard	<ul> <li>as standard</li> </ul>
LongLife arm	• as standard	• as standard
Valance Plus option		
Max. width	500 cm/600 cm	500 cm/600 cm
Max. awning projection	350 cm/300 cm	350 cm/300 cm
Cassette size (w x h)	326 x 160 mm	326 x 165 mm
Gear drive	0	0
Motor drive	<ul> <li>as standard</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>as standard</li> </ul>
Angle of pitch on awning	10° to 20°	10° to 20°
Valance Plus projection (h)	100 cm, 150 cm, 210 cm	100 cm, 150 cm, 210 cm
Patented weinor Opti-Flow-System®	as standard	as standard
Accessories		
Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system for Opal Design II/LED	○ bracket with special attachment	○ bracket with special attachment
BiSens Agido-3V product protection sensor	0	0
Controls		
Radio control	0	0
No remote	•	•
Weather sensors		
Sun/wind sensor BiConnect BiSens SW-230 V	0	0
Sun/wind sensor solar powered BiConnect BiSens SW-Solar+	0	0
Sun/wind/rain sensor BiConnect-BiSens-SWR-230V	0	0
Quality		

Tested up to

wind resistance class 2 according to DIN 13561 (wind strength 5 on the Beaufort scale)

● standard ○ optional — unavailable

Some options are subject to a surcharge. For prices, please refer to the weinor awnings price list.

# **Opal Design II** LED



# LED lighting – 30,000 hours of lighting require minimal energy consumption

Select LED components for top weinor quality:

- Integrated into the cassette
- Atmospheric light thanks to special glass lenses
- Lighting remains on even when awning is retracted
- Highly energy-efficient
- Operating life of 30,000 hours
- Infinitely dimmable when used with BiConnect radio control
- Easy to service: simply replace individual LED lights without uninstalling the awning

#### **Integrated LED lighting**

Awning width in cm	Number of separate LED spotlights	Awning width in cm	Number of separate LED spotlights
187 – 219 cm	3	440 – 494 cm	8
220 – 274 cm	4	495 – 549 cm	9
275 – 329 cm	5	550 – 603 cm	10
330 – 384 cm	6	604 – 650 cm	11
385 – 439 cm	7		

# **Opal Design II** Valance Plus



#### More privacy thanks to vertical privacy and sun screen (optional)

The motorised vertical awning fits elegantly into the awning's front profile.

• Glare protection and privacy shield up to a maximum valance height of 210 cm

Projection

Projection

• Extends to any length

Motorised main drive

Width

Width

- Awning can be set to any angle from 10° to 20°
- Valance Plus cannot be retrofitted





Gear drive

Motorised





Closed

How Valance Plus height is calculated

Height Valance Plus

#### **Available fabrics for the Valance Plus**

Maximum awning size for Valance Plus

500 cm

600 cm

	Soltis® 86, 92	Soltis® 86, 92	Acrylic			Perluca		Polyester		Star- Screen	Fibreglass screen
Pattern	unicolour	unicolour	stripes	unicolour	unicolour	unicolour	unicolour	stripes	unicolour	unicolour	
Roll width	177 cm	267 cm	120 cm	120 cm	240 cm	120 cm	240 cm	120 cm	120 cm	325 cm	max. 320 cm*
Valance length											
100 cm	N	N	L	N	N	N/L	N	L	Ν	N	N
150 cm	Ν	N	Q	Q	N	Q	N	Q	Q	N	N
210 cm	Q	N	Q	Q	N	Q	N	Q	Q	N	-

N Seamless: seamless fabric; structure of fabric runs crosswise to structure of awning fabric

350 cm

300 cm

Transverse seam: fabric with transverse seam; either in top or bottom third as desired; structure of fabric runs diagonally to 0 structure of awning fabric

Longitudinal seam: structure of fabric runs longitudinally to structure of awning fabric

Not available

Max. roll widths are stipulated in the collection brochure

Please note: On the gear-driven Valance Plus, it is possible that the Valance Plus bottom rail will close unevenly.

# **Opal Design II** Controls

## weinor BiConnect radio technology

Product	Electronics	BiConnect control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
Opal Design II	Opal Design II drive	BiRec receiver integrated into cassette	BiRec MA-K	<ul> <li>BiEasy 1M/5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> <li>1MW-3V wall transmitter</li> </ul>
Opal Design II LED	Opal Design II drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>BiRec combi-receiver for main drive and LED spotlights (with integrated power supply pack) integrated into cassette</li> <li>Dimmable LED</li> </ul>	BiRec MLED	<ul> <li>BiEasy 5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> </ul>
Opal Design II Valance Plus	Opal Design II and Valance Plus drive	<ul> <li>BiRec combi-receiver for main drive and Valance Plus drive integrated into cassette</li> <li>Table clearing protection</li> <li>Gradual soft stop</li> </ul>	BiRec MVLED	<ul> <li>BiEasy 5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> </ul>
Opal Design II LED Valance Plus	Opal Design II and Valance Plus drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>BiRec combi-receiver for main drive, Valance Plus drive and LED spotlights (with integrated power supply pack) integrated into cassette</li> <li>Dimmable LED</li> <li>Table clearing protection</li> <li>Gradual soft stop</li> </ul>	BiRec MVLED	<ul> <li>BiEasy 5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> </ul>
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	<ul> <li>Dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Installation of the reciever in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	BiRec HD	<ul> <li>BiEasy 5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> </ul>

Requires: awning with BiConnect remote control and sensors require a BiEasy 1M, 5M or 15M Go!



#### **Exclusive retraction protection**

- Co-ordinated retraction: first the Valance Plus, then the awning
- To make sure nothing gets knocked over on the terrace

### **Opal Design II** Controls

## Somfy io-homecontrol® radio technology

Product	Electronics	Somfy io-homecontrol control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
Opal Design II	Opal Design II drive	Somfy io remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette	Somfy io remote-controlled motor	<ul> <li>Situo 1 io Pure II/Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 io Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>
Opal Design II LED	Opal Design II drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy io remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for the LED spot- lights (with downstream power supply pack) integrated into cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	Somfy io remote-controlled motor and io Lighting Receiver Variation on/off	Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter
Opal Design II Valance Plus	Opal Design II and Valance Plus drive	<ul> <li>Somfy io remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for Valance Plus drive integrated into cassette</li> <li>No retraction protection in windy conditions</li> </ul>	Somfy io remote- controlled motor and radio control Awning Slim Receiver io Plug	Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter
Opal Design II LED Valance Plus	Opal Design II and Valance Plus drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>No retraction protection in windy conditions</li> <li>Somfy io remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for Valance Plus drive and LED spotlights (with downstream power supply pack) integrated into cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> <li>No retraction protection in windy conditions</li> </ul>		Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	<ul> <li>Not dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Installation of the reciever in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	Heating Slim Receiver on/off io 2KW STAS3/STAK3	<ul> <li>Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 io Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>

## Somfy RTS radio technology

Product	Electronics	Somfy RTS control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
Opal Design II	Opal Design II drive	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor	<ul> <li>Situo 1 RTS Pure II/Situo 1 Soliris RTS Pure II/Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 RTS Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>
Opal Design II LED	Opal Design II drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for the LED spot- lights (with downstream power supply pack) integrated into cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor and Lighting Slim Receiver RTS	Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter
Opal Design II Valance Plus	Opal Design II and Valance Plus drive	<ul> <li>Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for Valance Plus drive integrated into cassette</li> <li>No retraction protection in windy conditions</li> </ul>	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor and Universal Receiver RTS	Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter
Opal Design II LED Valance Plus	Opal Design II and Valance Plus drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for Valance Plus drive and LED spotlights (with downstream power supply pack) integrated into cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> <li>No retraction protection in windy conditions</li> </ul>	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor, Universal Receiver RTS and Lighting Slim Receiver RTS	Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	<ul> <li>Not dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Installation of the reciever in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	Heating Slim Receiver RTS Plug	Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5     Soliris RTS Pure II hand     transmitter

### **Opal Design II** Controls

### Hard wired with Somfy control

Product	Electronics	Hard wired Somfy control	Control
Opal Design II	Opal Design II drive	Somfy control for awning drive	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno
Opal Design II LED	Opal Design II drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy control for awning drive</li> <li>Switch on site for the LED spotlights</li> <li>LED power supply pack integrated into the cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno and suitable light switch (on site)
Opal Design II Valance Plus	Opal Design II and Valance Plus drive	<ul> <li>Somfy control for awning drive</li> <li>Switch on site for the Valance Plus drive</li> <li>No retraction protection in windy conditions</li> </ul>	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno and suitable double rocker switch (on site)
Opal Design II LED Valance Plus	Opal Design II and Valance Plus drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy control for awning drive</li> <li>Switch on site for the Valance Plus drive</li> <li>No retraction protection in windy conditions</li> <li>Switch on site for the LED spotlights</li> <li>LED power supply pack integrated into the cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno, and suitable double rocker switch and light switch (on site)
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	Not dimmable	Suitable switch (on site)

## Hard wired (existing switch/power supply on site)

Product	Electronics	Hard wired control	Control
Opal Design II	Opal Design II drive	Awning switch for the awning drive	e.g. double rocker switch switch (on site)
Opal Design II LED	Opal Design II drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Awning switch for the awning drive</li> <li>Switch on site for the LED spotlightss</li> <li>LED power supply pack integrated into the cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	e.g. double rocker switch and suitable light switch (on site)
Opal Design II Valance Plus	Opal Design II and Valance Plus drive	<ul> <li>Awning switch for the awning drive</li> <li>Switch on site for the Valance Plus drive</li> <li>No retraction protection in windy conditions</li> </ul>	e.g. 2 double rocker switches (on site)
Opal Design II LED Valance Plus	Opal Design II and Valance Plus drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Awning switch for the awning drive</li> <li>Switch on site for the Valance Plus drive</li> <li>No retraction protection in windy conditions</li> <li>Switch on site for the LED spotlights</li> <li>LED power supply pack integrated into the cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	e.g. 2 double rocker switches and suitable light switch (on site)
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	Not dimmable	Suitable switch (on site)

Note:

Please see the "Accessories" technical brochure for further details regarding the drive and control.

Some options are subject to a surcharge. For prices, please refer to the weinor awnings price list.



#### Site measurements – Determining the projection and head clearance height

- Find the projection by looking in the "Projection" table for the terrace depth.
- Using the projection from the table and the required angle of inclination, consult the "head clearance height" table for the head clearance height. This head clearance height refers to an installation height of 300 cm.
- Add/subtract the difference between 300 cm and the actual installation height to/from the head clearance height in the table.

#### Determining the projection

Angle of pitch	Terrace depth in cm							
	150	200	250	300	350	400		
5°	150	200	250	300	350	400		
15°	160	210	260	310	360	410		
25°	170	220	280	330	390	440		

Projection in cm (rounded figures)

This table can be used to find the awning projection for any given horizontal patio depth.

#### Determining the head clearance height

Angle of	Projection in cm								
pitch	150	200	250	300	350	400			
5°	275	270	270	260	260	250			
15°	250	240	220	210	200	190			
25°	220	200	180	160	140	120			

Head clearance height in cm (rounded figures)

This table is used to find the head clearance heights for various projections when the angle of pitch is  $5^{\circ}$ ,  $15^{\circ}$  or  $25^{\circ}$ .

This table is based on the example of an installation height of 300 cm (upper edge of awning).

#### Wall bracket

#### Sizes and bracket recommendations



Width	Number	Projection in cm (irregular figures possible)							
in cm	of arms	150	200	250	300	350	400		
187 – 200	2	•							
201 – 250	2								
251 – 300	2	•							
301 – 350	2	•							
351 – 400	2	•			•				
401 - 450	2	•					•		
451 – 500	2	•					٠		
501 – 550	2								
551 – 600	2								
601 – 650	2								

#### Installation on C20/25 concrete walls

with a casing of up to 200 mm, wind resistance class 2 and a permissible centric tensile load for anchor bolts of 5.71 kN.

- 2 Opal Design II standard wall brackets, 150 mm
   2 Opal Design II standard wall brackets, 300 mm
- 2 Opal Design II standard wall brackets, 300 mm
   3 Opal Design II standard wall brackets, 150 mm
- 2 Opal Design II standard wall brackets, 300 mm and 1 standard central bracket 150 mm

### Position of wall brackets and Opal Design II cassette

#### Wall bracket 150 mm (left and right)



## Position of wall brackets and Opal Design II cassette

#### Wall bracket 150 mm (left, right and centre)



#### Wall bracket 300 mm (left and right)



#### Wall bracket 300 mm (left and right) with wall bracket 150 mm (centre)





## **Cross-sections**

#### **Opal Design II LED**



#### **Opal Design II LED Valance Plus with motor**



Figures are in mm

# **Opal Design II** Installation

#### Installation on walls, ceilings and rafters is possible

Its dimensions mean that the Opal Design II can be mounted in a wide range of ways: not only on a wall but also on a ceiling or a rafter. The brackets and mounting plates are made of extruded, powder-coated aluminium.

#### Wall mounting – brackets





150 mm wall bracket



300 mm wall bracket





Cross-section of Opal Design II with ceiling bracket

### **Opal Design II** Installation

## Wall mounting – mounting plates



Mounting plate 660 x 220 x 15 mm





Position of the mounting plates using the Opal Design II 500 x 300 cm\* as an example.



Mounting plate 660 x 390 x 15 mm



Position of the mounting plates using the Opal Design II 500 x 300 cm\* as an example.



\* Depending on the width of the awning, the positioning of the mounting plates may vary.



Ceiling front plate 390 x 160 x 15 mm



## Minimum spacing distances for installation in the niche (wall mounting)





## **Ceiling mounting**









Ceiling bracket



Side view with ceiling bracket





## **Opal Design II** Installation



Side view: rafter bracket installation

The extraction force is the force with which the weight of the awning and the wind load pull on each upper fixing. The tables indicate this force in N per upper fixing. It varies depending on the awning size and the wall bracket/mounting plate used.

Selecting the wall bracket and anchoring system:

1. Consult relevant table for extraction force per fixing for selected awning size.

2. Select a wall bracket/mounting plate for which there is fixing material which can resist the indicated extraction force. Remember to take into account the spacing, the area which will be damaged if the fixing breaks out, the type of fixing material used and the mounting base.

See separate bracket overview for other bases.

1 standard wall bracket (150 mm), 1 standard wall bracket (150 mm) per awning arm, 1 standard wall bracket (150 mm) as a central bracket from a width of 501 cm Fixings: 6\* in all 1 standard wall bracket (300 mm)

plus 1 standard wall bracket (150 mm) as a central bracket from 501 cm, 1 standard wall bracket (300 mm) per awning arm,

Fasteners: 15\* in all Mounting plate (660 x 220 mm) incl.

1 standard wall bracket (150 mm), 1 standard wall bracket (150 mm) as a central bracket incl. base plate Fixings: 15\* in all Mounting plate (660 x 390 mm)

incl. 1 standard wall bracket (150 mm),

1 standard wall bracket (150 mm) as a central bracket incl. base plate Fixings: 15\* in all

1 standard wall bracket (150 mm) incl. roof front plate (370 x 160 mm), 1 standard wall bracket (150 mm) as central bracket, 1 standard wall bracket (150 mm) per awning arm Fixings: 11\* in all **Installation on C20/25 concrete walls** with a casing of up to 200 mm, wind resistance class 2 and a permissible centric tensile load for anchor bolts of 5.71 kN.

Width	Projection in cm								
in cm	150	200	250	300	350	400			
	647								
200	324								
	159								
	83								
	454								
	766	1140							
	383	570							
250	189	280							
	98	146							
	537	797							
	884	1317	1861						
	442	659	930						
300	218	324	457						
	113	169	238						
	620	921	1299						
	1003	1495	2108	2871					
	501	747	1054	1436					
350	247	367	517	704					
	129	191	270	367					
	703	1045	1472	2003					
	1121	1672	2355	3199	4069				
	560	836	1178	1599	2034				
400	276	411	578	784	996				
	144	214	301	409	519				
	786	1169	1644	2231	2836				
	1239	1850	2602	3527	4488	6418			
	620	925	1301	1763	2244	3209			
450	305	454	638	864	1099	1571			
	159	237	333	450	573	818			
	869	1294	1817	2460	3127	4470			
	1358	2027	2849	3854	5548	7024			
	679	1014	1425	1927	2774	3512			
500	334	498	699	945	1359	1719			
	174	260	364	492	708	896			
	952	1418	1990	2688	3867	4892			
	1476	2205	3097	4710	6034	7630			
	738	1102	1548	2355	3017	3815			
550	363	542	760	1154	1477	1867			
550	189	282	396	602	770	973			
	1035	1542	2162	3286	4205	5314			
	1594	2382	3344	5087	6519	8237			
	797	1191	1672	2544	3259	4118			
600	393	585	820	1247	1596	2016			
	205	305	427	650	832	1050			
	1117	1666	2335	3549	4543	5737			
	1713	2559	4036	5465	7004	8843			
	856	1280	2018	2722	3502	4/22			
650	422	629	990	132	1715	216/			
0.00	220	278	516	608	801	1178			
	1200	1700	2818	2812	/281	6150			
	1200	1/90	2010	3012	4001	0139			

\* Number of fixings required on site





1 universal ceiling bracket
(with holder plate),
1 universal ceiling bracket
(with holder plate) as a central
bracket from a width of 501 cm,
1 universal ceiling bracket (with
holder plate) per awning arm
Fixings: 12* in all

\* number of fixings required on site

1 rafter bracket + 1 standard wall bracket (150 mm) one left, one right for

1 rafter bracket + 1 standard wall bracket (150 mm) as a central bracket from width of 501 cm 1 rafter bracket +

1 rafter bracket +

1 mounting plate for rafters + 1 standard wall bracket (150 mm) one left, one right for each,

1 mounting plate for rafters + 1 standard wall bracket (150 mm) as a central bracket from a width of 501 cm

each,

#### Ceiling installation (on C20/25 concrete)

Extraction forces in N for ceiling mounting

Width	Projection in cm									
in cm	150	200	250	300	350	400				
200	449									
250	536	794								
300	623	921	1299							
350	709	1049	1475	2009						
400	796	1176	1651	2241	2858					
450	882	1303	1827	2474	3156	4502				
500	969	1430	2003	2706	3883	4929				
550	1055	1558	2179	3287	4224	5357				
600	1142	1685	2354	3552	4566	5785				
650	1228	1812	2817	3817	4907	6213				





#### Rafter mounting

Shear forces in N per bracket for rafter mounting

Width	Projection in cm								
in cm	150	200	250	300	350	400			
200	1153								
200	526								
250	1368	2050							
250	628	903			5195 2205 5790 8294				
300	1584	2371	3357						
500	730	730         1048         1447           1799         2692         3805         5195           933         1103         1643         2305							
350	1799	2692	3805	5 5195					
550	832	1193	1643	2205					
400	2014	3013	4253	5790	8294				
400	934 1338	1839	2460	3473					
450	2230	3335	4700	6385	9172	11663			
450	1036	1482	2035	2716	3843	4850			
500	2445	3656	5148	6980	10050	12766			
500	1138	1627	2231	2971	4213	5311			
550	2661	3977	5596	8477	10928	13868			
550	1240	1772	2426	3591	4583	5771			
600	2876	4298	6044	9156	11806	14970			
000	1342	1917	2622	3881	4953	6232			
650	3092	4619	7233	9835	12684	16072			
050	1444	2061	3118	4171	5322	6692			





**Cassette awning** 

# Semina Life Semina Life LED | Valance Plus | LED Valance Plus

**Semina Life** is the all-rounder among cassette-awnings. It impresses due to its modern, fresh design combined with weinor's technology tried and tested over many years. As it is such superb value for money the **Semina Life** is a real alternative to the semi-cassette. Its many technical highlights provide superb comfort and a long operating life. Whether young or old, modern or traditional: **Semina Life** is always just the right choice – in a class of its own!



#### Modern design covers:

The stainless steel look headplate rings can be combined with the required frame colour



Integrated rain gutter: Water drain

Stable, elegant brackets: With easy access to adjust the inclination



Wall mounting

Ceiling mounting

Rafter mounting

Semina Life LED (optional): Integrated lighting



# Semina Life Highlights



#### Valance Plus option:

Vertical privacy and sun protection

Both the awning and Valance Plus are available either with gear drive or motor drive.

**weinor LongLife arm:** Very durable and low-noise



# Semina Life Benefits



# Cassette-awning – youthful design with state-of-the-art technology

The Semina Life cassette is chic and offers protection against the weather.

- Innovative closing of the awning causing practically no wear at all thanks to the cushioned infeed rollers
- Beautifully shaped stainless steel look aluminium headplate rings



# Semina Life LED – cassette with integrated LED lighting

The LED spotlights integrated into the cassette produce atmospheric lighting on the patio.

- 30,000 LED light hours with lowest energy consumption (85% electricity saving compared to halogen technology)
- LED infinitely dimmable using weinor's BiConnect control



# Valance Plus – vertical privacy and sun protection

The Valance Plus is elegantly integrated into the awning's drop profile. It provides privacy and glare protection even with a low-lying sun.

- Continuously extendable up to 210 cm
- Patented weinor OptiFlow-System<sup>®</sup> to keep fabric ideally positioned and to close the drop profile safely



## Two-part bracket cover – simple angle of pitch adjustment

The lower part of the beautifully shaped cover can be easily removed. As a result there is very easy access to the screws for the angle of pitch adjustment. The pitch in the brackets is preset at the factory for easy installation.

# Semina Life Technology

Semina Life versions	Semina Life	Semina Life LED	
Technology			
Max. width	650 cm	650 cm	
Max. projection	400 cm	400 cm	
Cassette size (w x h) incl. standard bracket	307 mm x 194 mm	307 mm x 194 mm	
Gear drive	0	—	
Motor drive	<ul> <li>as standard</li> </ul>	• as standard	
Angle of pitch on awning	5° to 25°	5° to 25°	
Installation alternatives	can be installed on walls, ceilings and rafters		
LED lighting (separate spotlights)	—	<ul> <li>integrated into the awning's cassette</li> </ul>	
OptiNut pipe	• as standard	• as standard	
LongLife arm	<ul> <li>as standard</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>as standard</li> </ul>	
Valance Plus option			
Max. width	600 cm	600 cm	
Max. awning projection	350 cm	350 cm	
Cassette size (w x h)	367 x 194 mm	367 x 194 mm	
Gear drive	0	0	
Motor drive	as standard	<ul> <li>as standard</li> </ul>	
Valance Plus projection (h)	100 cm, 150 cm, 210 cm	100 cm, 150 cm, 210 cm	
Patented weinor Opti-Flow-System®	as standard	• as standard	
Accessories			
Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	$\bigcirc$ bracket with special attachment	$\bigcirc$ bracket with special attachment	
BiSens Agido-3V product protection sensor	0	0	
Controls			
Radio control	0	0	
No remote	•	•	
Weather sensors			
Sun/wind sensor BiConnect BiSens SW-230 V	0	0	
Sun/wind sensor solar powered BiConnect BiSens SW-Solar+	0	0	
Sun/wind/rain sensor BiConnect-BiSens-SWR-230V	0	0	
Quality	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
Tested up to	wind resistance class 2 according to DIN 135	61 (wind strength 5 on the Beaufort scale)	

● standard ○ optional — unavailable

01

# Semina Life LED



# LED lighting – 30,000 hours of lighting with lowest energy consumption

Select LED components for top weinor quality:

- Atmospheric light thanks to special glass lenses
- Visually integrated into the cassette
- Lighting remains on even when awning is retracted
- Highly energy-efficient
- Operating life of 30,000 hours
- Infinitely dimmable when used with BiConnect radio control
- Easy to service: simply replace individual LED lights without dismounting the awning

#### **Integrated LED lighting**

Awning width in cm	Number of separate LED spotlights	Awning width in cm	Number of separate LED spotlights
up to 150	2	381 – 440	7
151 – 220	3	441 - 490	8
221 – 270	4	491 – 550	9
271 – 330	5	551 – 650	10
331 – 380	6		

# Semina Life Valance Plus



# More privacy thanks to vertical privacy and sun screen (optional)

The gear-operated or motorised vertical awning is elegantly integrated into the awning's front profile.

- Glare protection and privacy shield up to a maximum valance height of 210 cm
- Extends to any length
- Use Valance Plus with an awning angle of pitch between  $10^\circ$  and  $20^\circ$
- Valance Plus cannot be retrofitted
- Valance Plus with motor only with motorised awning

#### Maximum awning size for Valance Plus

	Motorised main drive								
	Width	600 cm	Projection	350 cm					
Gear main drive									
	Width	500 cm	Projection	350 cm					
	Width	600 cm	Projection	300 cm					





Gear drive

Motorised





How Valance Plus height is calculated

Height Valance Plus

#### Available fabrics for the Valance Plus

	Soltis® 86, 92	Soltis® 86, 92	Acrylic			Perluca		Polyester		Star- Screen	Fibreglass screen
Pattern	unicolour	unicolour	stripes	unicolour	unicolour	unicolour	unicolour	stripes	unicolour	unicolour	
Roll width	177 cm	267 cm	120 cm	120 cm	240 cm	120 cm	240 cm	120 cm	120 cm	325 cm	max. 320 cm*
Valance length											
100 cm	Ν	N	L	N	N	N/L	N	L	Ν	N	N
150 cm	Ν	Ν	Q	Q	Ν	Q	Ν	Q	Q	N	Ν
210 cm	Q	N	Q	Q	N	Q	N	Q	Q	N	_

N Seamless: seamless fabric; structure of fabric runs crosswise to structure of awning fabric

Q Transverse seam: fabric with transverse seam; either in top or bottom third as desired; structure of fabric runs diagonally to structure of awning fabric

L Longitudinal seam: structure of fabric runs longitudinally to structure of awning fabric

Not available

\* Max. roll widths are stipulated in the collection brochure

Please note: On the gear-driven Valance Plus, it is possible that the Valance Plus bottom rail will close unevenly.

# Semina Life Controls



The receiver, power supply pack and other electrical components, such as the BiConnect receiver are integrated into the cassette The faceplate can be easily be opened for servicing purposes. The receiver, which is separate from the drive, is then easily accessible.

- **Exclusive retraction protection**
- Co-ordinated retraction: first the Valance Plus, then the awning
- To make sure nothing gets knocked over on the terrace

### weinor BiConnect radio technology

Product	Electronics	BiConnect control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
Semina Life	Semina Life drive	BiRec receiver integrated into cassette	BiRec MA-K	<ul> <li>BiEasy 1M/5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> <li>1MW-3V wall transmitter</li> </ul>
Semina Life LED	Semina Life drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>BiRec combi-receiver for main drive and LED spotlights (with integrated power supply pack) integrated into cassette</li> <li>Dimmable LED</li> </ul>	BiRec MLED	<ul> <li>BiEasy 5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> </ul>
Semina Life Valance Plus	Semina Life and Valance Plus drive	<ul> <li>BiRec combi-receiver for main drive and Valance Plus drive integrated into cassette</li> <li>Table clearing protection</li> <li>Gradual soft stop</li> </ul>	BiRec MVLED	<ul> <li>BiEasy 5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> </ul>
Semina Life LED Valance Plus	Semina Life and Valance Plus drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>BiRec combi-receiver for main drive, Valance Plus drive and LED spotlights (with integrated power supply pack) integrated into cassette</li> <li>Dimmable LED</li> <li>Table clearing protection</li> </ul>	BiRec MVLED	<ul> <li>BiEasy 5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> </ul>
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	<ul> <li>Dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Installation of the reciever in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	BiRec HD	<ul> <li>BiEasy 5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> </ul>

Requires: awning with BiConnect remote control and sensors require a BiEasy 1M, 5M or 15M Go!
## Somfy io-homecontrol® radio technology

Product	Electronics	Somfy io-homecontrol control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
Semina Life	Semina Life drive	Somfy io remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette	Somfy io remote-controlled motor	<ul> <li>Situo 1 io Pure II/Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 io Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>
Semina Life LED	Semina Life drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy io remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for the LED spot- lights (with downstream power supply pack) integrated into cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	Somfy io remote-controlled motor and io Lighting Receiver Variation on/off	Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter
Semina Life Valance Plus	Semina Life and Valance Plus drive	<ul> <li>Somfy io remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for Valance Plus drive integrated into cassette</li> <li>No retraction protection in windy conditions</li> </ul>	Somfy io remote- controlled motor and radio control Awning Slim Receiver io Plug	Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter
Semina Life LED Valance Plus	Semina Life and Valance Plus drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy io remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for Valance Plus drive and LED spotlights (with downstream power supply pack) integrated into cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> <li>No retraction protection in windy conditions</li> </ul>	Somfy io remote- controlled motor, io Lighting Receiver Variation on/off and radio control Awning Slim Receiver io Plug	Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	<ul> <li>Not dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Installation of the reciever in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	Heating Slim Receiver on/off io 2KW STAS3/STAK3	<ul> <li>Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 io Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>

# Somfy RTS radio technology

Product	Electronics	Somfy RTS control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
Semina Life	Semina Life drive	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor	<ul> <li>Situo 1 RTS Pure II/Situo 1 Soliris RTS Pure II/Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 RTS Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>
Semina Life LED	Semina Life drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for the LED spot- lights (with downstream power supply pack) integrated into cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor and Lighting Slim Receiver RTS	Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter
Semina Life Valance Plus	Semina Life and Valance Plus drive	<ul> <li>Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for Valance Plus drive integrated into cassette</li> <li>No retraction protection in windy conditions</li> </ul>	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor and Universal Receiver RTS	Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter
Semina Life LED Valance Plus	Semina Life and Valance Plus drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for Valance Plus drive and LED spotlights (with downstream power supply pack) integrated into cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> <li>No retraction protection in windy conditions</li> </ul>	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor, Universal Receiver RTS and Lighting Slim Receiver RTS	Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	<ul> <li>Not dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Installation of the reciever in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	Heating Slim Receiver RTS Plug	Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter

### Semina Life Controls

### Hard wired with Somfy control

Product	Electronics	Hard wired Somfy control	Control
Semina Life	Semina Life drive	Somfy control for awning drive	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno
Semina Life LED	Semina Life drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy control for awning drive</li> <li>Switch on site for the LED spotlights</li> <li>LED power supply pack integrated into the cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno and suitable light switch (on site)
Semina Life Valance Plus	Semina Life and Valance Plus drive	<ul> <li>Somfy control for awning drive</li> <li>Switch on site for the Valance Plus drive</li> <li>No retraction protection in windy conditions</li> </ul>	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno and suitable double rocker switch (on site)
Semina Life LED Valance Plus	Semina Life and Valance Plus drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy control for awning drive</li> <li>Switch on site for the Valance Plus drive</li> <li>No retraction protection in windy conditions</li> <li>Switch on site for the LED spotlights</li> <li>LED power supply pack integrated into the cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno, and suitable double rocker switch and light switch (on site)
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	• Not dimmable	Suitable switch (on site)

### Hard wired (existing switch/power supply on site)

Product	Electronics	Hard wired control	Control
Semina Life	Semina Life drive	Awning switch for the awning drive	e.g. double rocker switch switch (on site)
Semina Life LED	Semina Life drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Awning switch for the awning drive</li> <li>Switch on site for the LED spotlightss</li> <li>LED power supply pack integrated into the cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	e.g. double rocker switch and suitable light switch (on site)
Semina Life Valance Plus	Semina Life and Valance Plus drive	<ul> <li>Awning switch for the awning drive</li> <li>Switch on site for the Valance Plus drive</li> <li>No retraction protection in windy conditions</li> </ul>	e.g. 2 double rocker switches (on site)
Semina Life LED Valance Plus	Semina Life and Valance Plus drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Awning switch for the awning drive</li> <li>Switch on site for the Valance Plus drive</li> <li>No retraction protection in windy conditions</li> <li>Switch on site for the LED spotlights</li> <li>LED power supply pack integrated into the cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	e.g. 2 double rocker switches and suitable light switch (on site)
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	Not dimmable	Suitable switch (on site)



Note:

Please see the "Accessories" technical brochure for further details regarding the drive and control.

### Semina Life Controls

### Gear drive (optional)



The Semina Life can of course be extended and retracted using a gear handle too (with a max. projection of 350 cm). This option is recommended whenever it is hard to connect to an electrical power source on the site or if the awning is not frequently used.

- The Semina Life has a universal bevel gear system.
- End stop adjustable from outside
- Tested according to DIN EN 14203
- Freewheel device when extended



Standard gear outlet with wall mounting

Gear outlet with ceiling/balcony installation

### Tempura heating system (optional)



334

# The perfect combination: Semina Life with Tempura heating system, Valance Plus and BiConnect\*:

- Automated retraction with BiConnect: first the Valance Plus, then the awning
- As a result, the Valance Plus is protected from the material being damaged due to overheating by the Tempura heating system

#### **Please note:**

The Tempura's angle of pitch is restricted to 15° as standard. (This restriction is to avoid the wall being heated up too much by the Tempura.) The grub screw, which restricts the angle of pitch, can be removed if the Semina Life is adjusted up to 10° at the most. Then it is possible to adjust the Tempura's angle of pitch up to 30°.

\* The heating may not be attached to awnings with Valance Plus. Unless a control is used which ensures that the awning is always extended first and then the Valance Plus and that the Valance Plus is always retracted first before the awning.

In this way safety clearances are always adhered to.

233

# Semina Life Roller support



Semina Life: wall mounting with centre bracket and roller support

- From a width of 551 cm or more, a roller support and centre bracket is used in the middle
- The sliding support bearing is preassembled and can be adjusted to the size of the fabric roll accordingly
- Support of load against the wall or roof by means of simple screw fastening



Semina Life centre bracket: wall mounting (rear view)



Centre bracket (wall bracket)
 Cassette
 Fabric roller bearing
 Fabric rolls
 Roller support
 Sliding support bearing



Semina Life centre bracket: roof mounting (rear view)



Semina Life centre bracket: rafter mounting with rafter bracket (rear view)

# Semina Life Planning



### Site measurements – determining the projection and head clearance height

- Find the projection by looking in the "Projection" table for the terrace depth.
- Using the projection from the table and the required angle of inclination, consult the "head clearance height" table for the head clearance height. This head clearance height refers to an installation height of 300 cm.
- Add/subtract the difference between 300 cm and the actual installation height to/from the head clearance height in the table.

#### Determining the projection

Angle of	Terrace depth in cm							
pitch	150	200	250	300	350	400		
5°	151	201	251	301	351	400		
15°	155	207	259	311	362	400		
25°	166	221	276	331	386	400		

Projection in cm (rounded figures)

This table can be used to find the awning projection for any given horizontal patio depth.

#### Determining the head clearance height

Angle of	Projection in cm							
pitch	150	200	250	300	350	400		
5°	276	272	267	263	258	254		
15°	250	237	224	211	198	185		
25°	226	204	183	162	141	120		

Head clearance height in cm (rounded figures)

This table is used to find the head clearance heights for various projections when the angle of inclination is  $5^{\circ}$ ,  $15^{\circ}$  or  $25^{\circ}$ .

This table is based on the example of an installation height of 300 cm (upper edge of awning).

### Semina Life Planning

### Wall bracket

### Sizes and bracket recommendations



Width	Number	Projection in cm (irregular figures possible)						
in cm	of arms	150	200	250	300	350	400	
187 – 200	2							
201 – 250	2							
251 - 300	2							
301 – 350	2							
351 - 400	2							
401 - 450	2							
451 – 500	2						•	
501 – 550	2						•	
551 - 600	2							
601 - 650	2							

#### Installation on C20/25 concrete walls

with a casing of up to 200 mm, wind resistance class 2 and a permissible centric tensile load for anchor bolts of 5.71 kN.

- 2 Semina Life standard wall brackets 250 mm
- 2 Semina Life wall brackets 430 mm
- 2 Semina Life standard wall brackets 250 mm and 1 standard centre bracket 250 mm

35

nin.

 2 Semina Life wall brackets 430 mm and 1 standard centre bracket 250 mm

### Position of wall brackets and Semina Life cassette



### Minimum spacing distances for installation in the niche (wall mounting)



### Semina Life Planning

### **Cross-sections**

#### Semina Life LED



#### Semina Life Valance Plus (cross-section)



### Wall mounting – brackets





Wall bracket (without cover) 250 mm



90

С



Wall bracket (with cover)



## Wall mounting – brackets



Wall bracket (without cover) 430 mm









Wall bracket (with cover)

### Wall mounting – mounting plates



Mounting plate for wall mounting 660 x 220 x 15 mm



660 320 30 140 140 64014  $\phi$ 00  $\oplus$  $\oplus$ Ð \* # M12 ÷ <u>220</u> 170 106 ¢ (54) 0 φ 230 200

Position of the mounting plates using the Semina Life 500 x 300 cm\* as an example.



Mounting plate for wall mounting 660 x 390 x 15 mm



Position of the mounting plates using the Semina Life 500 x 300 cm\* as an example.



\* Depending on the width of the awning, the positioning of the mounting plates may vary.

### Wall mounting – mounting plates



Roof front plate for wall mounting 540 x 220 x 15 mm





Mounting plate for centre bracket 370 x 220 x 15 mm



## **Ceiling mounting**











256

0

42

165 194



Ceiling bracket (without cover)

-

Ceiling bracket (with cover)

### **Rafter mounting**







Rafter bracket with mounting plate and wall bracket with cover



Rafter bracket (right)



Mounting plate for rafter bracket 294 x 80 x 15 mm



Adaptor plate for rafter bracket 260 x 190 x 15 mm



35

22



Rafter bracket without mounting plate for rafters (right)







Rafter bracket with mounting plate for rafters (right) weinor recommends using mounting plates for rafter brackets



### **Extraction forces**

The extraction force is the force with which the weight of the awning and the wind load pull on each upper fixing. The tables indicate this force in N per upper fixing. It varies depending on the awning size and the wall bracket/mounting plate used.

Selecting the wall bracket and anchoring system:

1. Consult relevant table for extraction force per fixing for selected awning size.

2. Select a wall bracket/mounting plate for which there is fixing material which can resist the indicated extraction force. Remember to take into account the spacing, the area which will be damaged if the fixing breaks out, the type of fixing material used and the mounting base.

See separate bracket overview for other bases.

1 standard wall bracket (250 mm) per awning arm, 1 centre bracket (250 mm) with width of 551 cm or more Number of fixing materials: without a centre bracket 8\* in total with a centre bracket 12\* in total 1 standard wall bracket (430 mm) per awning arm, 1 centre bracket (250 mm) with width of 551 cm or more Number of fixing materials: without a centre bracket 12\* in total with a centre bracket 16\* in total Mounting plate (660 x 220 x 15 mm) incl. 1 standard wall bracket (250 mm) per awning arm 1 mounting plate for centre bracket incl. 1 centre bracket (250 mm) with width of 551 cm or more Number of fixing materials: without a centre bracket 12\* in total with a centre bracket 16\* in total Mounting plate (660 x 390 x 15 mm) incl. 1 standard wall bracket (250 mm) per awning arm 1 mounting plate for centre bracket incl. 1 centre bracket (250 mm) with width of 551 cm or more Number of fixing materials: without a centre bracket 12\* in total with a centre bracket 16\* in total 1 roof front mounting plate incl. 1 standard wall bracket (250 mm) per awning arm, 1 mounting plate for centre bracket incl. 1 centre bracket (250 mm) with width of 551 cm or more Number of fixing materials: without a centre bracket 8\* in total with a centre bracket 10\* in total

**Installation on C20/25 concrete walls** with a casing of up to 200 mm, wind resistance class 2 and a permissible centric tensile load for anchor bolts of 5.71 kN.

Width	Projection in cm						
in cm	150	200	250	300	350	400	
	564						
	282						
200	178						
	89						
	378						
	668	998					
	334	499					
250	211	314					
	105	157					
	448	668					
	771	1153	1637				
	386	576	819				
300	243	363	515				
	122	181	257				
	517	771	1094				
	875	1308	1853	2512			
	438	654	926	1256			
350	276	412	582	789			
	138	206	291	394			
	587	875	1238	1676			
	979	1463	2068	2797	3556		
	490	731	1034	1398	1778		
400	309	461	650	878	1116		
	154	230	325	439	558		
	656	979	1382	1866	2371		
	1083	1618	2283	3082	3920	5584	
	541	809	1142	1541	1960	2792	
450	342	509	718	968	1230	1751	
	171	255	359	484	615	876	
	726	1083	1526	2057	2614	3722	
	1187	1773	2499	3367	4283	6108	
	593	887	1249	1683	2142	3054	
500	374	558	786	1057	1344	1916	
	187	279	393	529	672	958	
	796	1186	1669	2247	2856	4070	
	1291	1928	2714	3652	4647	6631	
	645	964	1357	1826	2324	3316	
550	407	607	853	1147	1458	2080	
550	204	304	427	573	729	1040	
	865	1290	1813	2437	3099	4419	
	130/	2083	2930	2437	5011	7155	
	697	1042	1/65	1968	2505	3578	
600	110	656	021	1226	1572	22/10	
000	220	200	161	610	796	1122	
	025	1204	1057	2627	22/11	1122	
	930	1394	21/15	2027	5341	4/00	
	740	1110	1572	4221	2607	2020	
650	/49	705	13/3	1226	2007	2022	
ULU	4/3	705	989	1320	040	1204	
	230	352	494	003	843	1204	
	1005	1498	2101	2817	3283	5117	





\* number of fixings required on site

### **Extraction forces**

### Ceiling installation (on C20/25 concrete)

Extraction forces in N for ceiling mounting

Width	Projection in cm							
in cm	150	200	250	300	350	400		
200	506							
250	590	850						
300	674	973	1357					
350	757	1097	1529	2055				
400	841	1221	1701	2283	2897			
450	924	1345	1873	2511	3189	4513		
500	1008	1469	2045	2739	3480	4932		
550	1091	1593	2217	2967	3772	5350		
600	1199	1742	2414	3219	4088	5794		
650	1283	1865	2586	3447	4379	6212		

1 ceiling angle incl. 1 standard wall bracket (250 mm) per awning arm, 1 ceiling angle incl. 1 centre bracket with width of 551 cm or more Number of fixing materials:

without a centre bracket 8\* in total with a centre bracket 12\* in total



### F = force

### Rafter mounting

Shear forces in N for rafter mounting

Width	Projection in cm							
in cm	150	200	250	300	350	400		
200	1417							
200	693							
250	1660	2394						
250	802	1099						
200	1903	2752	3832					
300	911	1254	1691					
250	2146	3109	4324	5798				
3.30	1020	1410	1901	2497				
400	2389	3466	4816	6446	8152			
400	1130	1565	2111	2770	3460			
450	2632	3824	5309	7094	8976	12694		
430	1239	1721	2321	3043	3804	5307		
500	2876	4181	5801	7742	9801	13876		
500	1348	1876	2531	3316	4148	5796		
FEO	3119	4538	6293	8390	10625	15058		
330	1458	2031	2741	3589	4493	6285		
600	3404	4937	6827	9079	11491	16281		
000	1609	2229	2993	3903	4879	6816		
650	3647	5294	7319	9727	12316	17463		
0.0	1718	23784	3203	4176	5223	7304		



1 rafter bracket incl. 1 standard wall bracket (250 mm) per awning, one left, one right for each, 1 rafter bracket incl. 1 centre bracket (250 mm) with width of 551 cm or more

1 rafter bracket incl. 1 mounting plate incl. 1 standard wall bracket (250 mm) per awning, one left, one right for each, 1 rafter bracket with 1 mounting plate incl. 1 centre bracket (250 mm) with width of 551 cm or more



**Cassette awning** 

# Cassita II Cassita II LED

With its slim, purist design, the **Cassita II** is in perfect harmony with modern home interior trends. Despite its ultra-slim design, the cassette is packed with a wealth of technological innovations. The minimalist look of the two-point suspension system underlines the contemporary design. Its dimensions make the **Cassita II** the ideal sun protection system for most patio sizes.



Attractive design: With shapely aluminium caps

**Mounting options:** Installation on walls, ceilings and rafters is possible



Variant Cassita II LED: Pleasant patio lighting



# Cassita II Highlights



**Slim cassette:** Can be installed beneath the ceiling

**Two-point mounting:** quick mounting, slimline design



Adjust the pitch to any angle: Simple and safe



weinor LongLife arm: Very durable and low-noise



# Cassita II Benefits



# New design – with shapely aluminium caps

At just 12 cm high, the elegant weinor Cassita II cassette is especially slim. Nonetheless it houses all the technology and protects it reliably from the elements.

- New, purist design
- Harmonious, slim oval shape
- Beautifully-shaped aluminium caps with distinctive weinor logo
- Excellent protection for the fabric and fittings



# Two-point mounting – elegant and quickly installed

The folding arms on the Cassita II are placed directly on the headplates. This means that only two brackets are required to install the awning.

- Easy to install on a wall: just two wall mountings
- Highlights the overall elegance of the unit
- Screws are hidden from sight



# Adjust the pitch to any angle – simple and safe

The Cassita II comes with a practical adjusting bracket on the awning cassette, making it especially easy to adjust the angle.

- Set to any angle from 5 45° by turning the cassette
- Easy to install
- Stays in place and remains stable even in surging winds



### Cassita II LED – with flush patio lighting

The Cassita II LED provides pleasant lighting on your patio. The light bar matches the colour of the cassette and the spotlights are hidden out of sight.

- 30,000 hours of lighting with minimal energy consumption
- Highly energy-efficient

# Cassita II Technology

Cassita II versions	Cassita II	Cassita II LED
Technology		
Max. width	550 cm	550 cm
Max. projection	300 cm	300 cm
Cassette size (w x h) incl. standard bracket	266 x 155 mm	266 x 155 mm
Coupled systems	—	—
Gear drive*	0	-
Motor drive	<ul> <li>as standard</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>as standard</li> </ul>
Angle of pitch on awning	5° to 45°	5° to 45°
Installation alternatives	can be installed on walls, ceilings and rafters	
Lighting	—	• LED light bar
OptiNut roller tube	• as standard	• as standard
LongLife arm	• as standard	• as standard
Accessories		
Heating system Tempura/Tempura Quadra	0	0
BiSens Agido-3V product protection sensor	0	0
Controls		
Radio control	0	0
No remote	•	•
Weather sensors		
Sun/wind sensor BiConnect BiSens SW-230 V	0	0
Sun/wind sensor solar powered BiConnect BiSens SW-Solar+	0	0
Sun/wind/rain sensor BiConnect-BiSens-SWR-230V	0	0
Quality		
Tested up to	wind resistance class 2 according to DIN 135	61 (wind strength 5 on the Beaufort scale)

\* A maximum pitch of 25° may be set.

● standard ○ optional — unavailable

# Cassita II LED



# LED lighting – 30,000 hours of lighting require minimal energy consumption

The select LED components represent the very best in weinor quality:

- Flush installation
- Atmospheric light thanks to special glass lenses
- Lighting remains on even when awning is retracted
- Highly energy-efficient
- Operating life of 30,000 hours
- Infinitely dimmable when used with BiConnect radio control
- Easy to service: simply replace individual LED lights without uninstalling the awning

#### **Integrated LED lighting**

Awning width in cm	Number of separate LED spotlights	Awning width in cm	Number of separate LED spotlights
180 – 219	3	385 – 439	7
220 – 274	4	440 - 494	8
275 – 329	5	495 – 550	9
330 - 384	6		

# Cassita II Controls

### Installation location for electrical components





The receiver box is accommodated in the wall bracket.

**Note:** There is less need for a bracket cover when ordering a BiConnect.

### weinor BiConnect radio controller

Product	Electronics	BiConnect control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
Cassita II	Cassita II drive	BiRec receiver integrated into cassette	BiRec MA-K	<ul> <li>BiEasy 1M/5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> <li>1MW-3V wall transmitter</li> </ul>
Cassita II LED	Cassita II drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>BiRec combi-receiver for main drive and LED light bar (with integrated power supply pack) integrated into light bar</li> <li>Dimmable LED</li> </ul>	BiRec MLED	<ul> <li>BiEasy 5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> </ul>
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	<ul> <li>Dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Installation of the reciever in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	BiRec HD	<ul> <li>BiEasy 5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> </ul>

Requires: awning with BiConnect remote control and sensors require a BiEasy 1M, 5M or 15M Go!

### Cassita II Controls

## Somfy io-homecontrol<sup>®</sup> radio technology

Product	Electronics	Somfy io-homecontrol control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
Cassita II	Cassita II drive	Somfy io remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette	Somfy io remote-controlled motor	<ul> <li>Situo 1 io Pure II/Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 io Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>
Cassita II LED	Cassita II drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy io remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for the LED light bar (with downstream power supply pack) integrated into light bar</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	Somfy io remote-controlled motor and Lighting Receiver Variation on/off io	• Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	<ul> <li>Not dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Installation of the reciever in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	Heating Slim Receiver on/off io 2KW STAS3/STAK3	<ul> <li>Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 io Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>

## Somfy RTS radio technology

Product	Electronics	Somfy RTS control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
Cassita II	Cassita II drive	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor	<ul> <li>Situo 1 RTS Pure II/Situo 1 Soliris RTS Pure II/Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 RTS Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>
Cassita II LED	Cassita II drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for the LED light bar (with downstream power supply pack) integrated into light bar</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor and Lighting Slim Receiver RTS	Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	<ul> <li>Not dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Installation of the reciever in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	Heating Slim Receiver RTS Plug	Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter



Note:

Please see the "Accessories" technical brochure for further details regarding the drive and control.

### Hard wired with Somfy control

Due du at	Flasturenting	Hand solve of Camela according	Control
Product	Electronics	Hard wired Somty control	Control
Cassita II	Cassita II drive	<ul> <li>Somfy control for awning drive</li> </ul>	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno
Cassita II LED	Cassita II drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy control for awning drive</li> <li>Switch on site for the LED light bar</li> <li>LED power supply pack integrated into light bar</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno and suitable light switch (on site)
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	Not dimmable	Suitable switch (on site)

## Hard wired (existing switch/power supply on site)

Product	Electronics	Hard wired control	Control
Cassita II	Cassita II drive	Awning switch for the awning drive	e.g. double rocker switch switch (on site)
Cassita II LED	Cassita II drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Awning switch for the awning drive</li> <li>Switch on site for the LED light bar</li> <li>LED power supply pack integrated into light bar</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	e.g. double rocker switch and suitable light switch (on site)
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	Not dimmable	Suitable switch (on site)

### Gear drive (optional)



The Cassita II can, of course, also be extended and retracted using a crank. This option is recommended whenever it is hard to connect to an electrical power source on the site or if the awning is not frequently used.

The weinor Cassita II has a universal bevel gear system

- With an end stop that can be set from outside
- Tested according to DIN EN 14203
- Freewheel device when extended
- A maximum pitch of 25° may be set.

# Cassita II Planning



### Site measurements – determining the projection and head clearance height

- Find the projection by looking in the "Projection" table for the terrace depth.
- Using the projection from the table and the required angle of pitch, consult the "head clearance height" table for the head clearance height. This head clearance height refers to an installation height of 300 cm.
- Add/subtract the difference between 300 cm and the actual installation height to/from the head clearance height in the table.

### Determining the projection

Angle of	Terrace depth in cm					
pitch	150	200	250	300		
5°	150	200	250	300		
15°	160	210	260	310		
25°	170	220	280	330		

Projection in cm (rounded figures)

This table can be used to find the awning projection for any given horizontal patio depth.

#### Determining the head clearance height

Angle of	Projection in cm					
pitch	150	200	250	300		
5°	280	270	270	260		
15°	250	240	230	210		
25°	230	210	180	160		

Head clearance height in cm (rounded figures)

This table is used to find the head clearance heights for various projections when the angle of pitch is  $5^{\circ}$ ,  $15^{\circ}$  or  $25^{\circ}$ .

This table is based on the example of an installation height of 300 cm (upper edge of awning).

### Cassita II Planning

### Wall bracket

### Sizes and bracket recommendations



Width	Number	Projection in cm (irregular figures possible)				
in cm	of arms	150	200	250	300	
- 250	2	•	•	•		
251 - 300	2	•		•	•	
301 - 350	2	•	•	•	•	
351 - 400	2	•	•	•	•	
401 - 450	2	•	•	•	•	
451*- 500	2	•	•	•	•	
501 – 550	2	•	•	•	•	

• Cassita II standard wall bracket

 Mounting plate 200 x 260 incl. 1 standard wall bracket and covers

### Installation on C20/25 concrete walls

with a casing of up to 200 mm, wind resistance class 2 and a permissible centric tensile load for anchor bolts of 5.71 kN.

Two housing clips are always used for widths of 451 cm and higher. These are positioned 75 cm to the left and right of the centre of the cassette.





### Cassita II Planning

## Cross-sections

### weinor Cassita II



### weinor Cassita II LED



### Installation on walls, ceilings and rafters is possible

Its construction means that the weinor Cassita II can be mounted in a wide range of ways: not only on walls but also ceilings or rafters. The brackets and mounting plates are made of extruded, powder-coated aluminium.

### Wall mounting – brackets









150



Standard wall bracket



Cassita II with standard wall bracket

### Wall mounting – mounting plates







Position of the mounting plates using the Cassita II 500 x 300 cm\* as an example.



Mounting plate, 660 x 390 x 15 mm + standard wall bracket



Position of the mounting plates using the Cassita II 500 x 300 cm\* as an example.



\* Depending on the width of the awning, the positioning of the mounting plates may vary.



Mounting plate, 260 x 220 x 15 mm + standard wall bracket



### Minimum spacing distances for installation



### **Ceiling installation I**



Compact ceiling installation: a stable, elegant solution (not possible with Cassita II LED)



221

01

## **Ceiling installation II**



Ceiling installation specifically for Cassita II LED: with wall bracket and ceiling bracket











### **Rafter mounting**



Installation on rafters using rafter bracket, mounting plate and wall bracket, 150 mm wide







### **Extraction forces**

The extraction force is the force with which the weight of the awning and the wind load pull on each upper fixing. The tables indicate this force in N per upper fixing. It varies depending on the awning size and the wall bracket/mounting plate used.

Selecting the wall bracket and anchoring system:

1. Consult relevant table for extraction force per fixing for selected awning size.

2. Select a wall bracket/mounting plate for which there is fixing material which can resist the indicated extraction force. Remember to take into account the spacing, the area which will be damaged if the fixing breaks out, the type of fixing material used and the mounting base.

See separate bracket overview for other bases.

1 standard wall bracket (150 mm) and covers, 1 standard wall bracket (150 mm) and covers per awning arm Fasteners: 6\* in total Mounting plate, 260 x 220 mm incl. 1 standard wall bracket (150 mm) and covers Fasteners: 8\* in total Mounting plate, 660 x 220 mm incl. 1 standard wall bracket (150 mm) and covers Fasteners: 12\* in total Mounting plate, 660 x 390 mm incl. 1 standard wall bracket (150 mm) and covers Fasteners: 12\* in total Installation on front of concrete ceiling with 1 standard wall bracket (150 mm) and covers, 1 standard wall bracket (150 mm) and covers per awning arm Fasteners: 6\* in total

\* number of fixings required on site

**Installation on C20/25 concrete walls** with a casing of up to 200 mm, wind resistance class 2 and a permissible centric tensile load for anchor bolts of 5.71 kN.

Width	Projection in cm			
in cm	150	200	250	300
	1082	1646	2370	
	322	489	705	
250	161	245	352	
	84	127	184	
	1322	2011	2897	3874
	1248	1900	2731	3654
	371	565	812	1086
300	186	282	406	543
	97	147	212	283
	1525	2323	3338	4466
	1414	2155	3092	4139
	420	641	919	1230
350	210	320	460	615
	110	167	240	321
	1729	2634	3779	5059
	1580	2410	3453	4623
	470	716	1027	1375
400	235	358	513	687
	122	187	267	358
	1932	2945	4220	5651
	1747	2665	3814	5108
	519	792	1134	1519
450	260	396	567	759
	135	206	295	396
	2135	3257	4661	6243
	1913	2919	4175	5592
	569	868	1241	1663
500	284	434	621	831
	148	226	323	433
	2338	3568	5102	6835
	2079	3174	4535	6925
	618	944	1348	2059
550	309	472	674	1029
	161	246	351	536
	2541	3879	5543	8464





F = force

### **Extraction forces**

1 standard wall bracket (150 mm) with ceiling bracket, 1 standard wall bracket (150 mm) with ceiling bracket

\* number of fixings required

per awning arm Fasteners: 8\* in total 1 compact ceiling bracket, 1 compact ceiling bracket per

awning arm Fasteners: 6\* in total

on site

#### Ceiling installation (on C20/25 concrete)

Extraction force in N per upper fastener in ceiling bracket

Width	Projection in cm				
in cm	150	200	250	300	
250	469	705	1011		
	509	769	1106	1483	
200	544	817	1169	1564	
500	591	892	1278	1713	
250	620	930	1326	1775	
550	673	1014	1450	1944	
400	695	1042	1484	1986	
400	755	1137	1622	2174	
450	771	1155	1641	2196	
450	837	1259	1794	2405	
500	846	1267	1799	2407	
	918	1382	1966	2635	
FEO	922	1380	1956	2959	
550	1000	1504	2138	3241	





F = force

#### **Rafter mounting**

Shear forces in N per bracket for rafter mounting

Width	Projection in cm				
in cm	150	200	250	300	
250	1205	1826	2633		
250	562	813	1139		
200	1394	2113	3037	4075	
500	653	944	1317	1737	
250	1583	2399	3441	4618	
300	744	1074	1495	1971	
400	1772	2685	3845	5160	
400	836	1205	1674	2206	
450	1961	2971	4248	5703	
450	927	1335	1852	2440	
500	2150	3257	4652	6245	
500	1018	1466	2030	2674	
550	2339	3543	5056	7672	
550	1110	1596	2208	3266	



1 rafter bracket and 1 standard wall bracket (150 mm) and covers, each for left- and right-hand side 1 rafter bracket and 1 mounting plate and 1 standard wall bracket (150 mm) and covers, each for left- and right-hand side


Cassette awning

## I/K/N 2000

The **I/K2000** is the tried-and-tested, classic cassette awning – as an **I2000** without rear wall for level building facades, as the **K2000** with back plate for uneven bases. The sturdy weinor awning with its carrier bar can be used almost anywhere. As the decor on the front profile and the side caps suggest, the **I/K2000** tends towards a more traditional design. The optional LED light bar makes the awning part of any stylish evening. The **N2000** is literally a niche item: with its projection profile, the awning disappears almost completely into the facade – with simple, straight lines, it is designed to meet a specific need.



**Simple installation** With wall bracket and carrier bar



Wind lock safety device: Prevents the awning from lifting up in gusts of wind from below



With back plate

**N 2000:** For niche installations

**I 2000:** Without back plate

## I/K/N 2000 Highlights

**Coupled/joined units:** With roller supports





or jockey cover

**Optional LED Design light bar:** Highly energy-efficient



**weinor LongLife arm:** Very durable and low-noise



## I/K/N 2000 Benefits



## I 2000: open cassette – perfect for wall installation

The I 2000 cassette awning is open on the side facing the wall.

- Extremely well suited to wall mounting, e.g. beneath roof overhangs
- Shapely front profile allows it to close precisely and provide perfect protection for fabric and fittings



## K 2000: closed cassette – back plate for extra protection

The K 2000 features an additional rear wall, completely closing it off.

- For every constructional situation
- Back plate profile makes it equally suitable for
  - wall installation
  - ceiling installation
  - rafter installation
  - installation on special brackets



## weinor LongLife Arm – durable, quiet operation

The weinor LongLife arm features an exceptionally robust high-tech belt.

- Tested to more than 100,000 cycles
- Extremely quiet operation
- No maintenance required
- Drop forged aluminium in joint light but highly robust

#### I/K/N 2000 Benefits



## N 2000: niche cassette – flush to facade installations

The N 2000 is specially designed for niche installation.

- Embedded in the building facade
- Edge of front profile fits flush with the building facade
- Tilting mechanism ensures the front profile closes securely



#### Wind lock safety device – reliable protection

The ultramodern technology prevents the awning from lifting up when wind gusts from below.

- Patented wind lock safety device
- Via a tilting mechanism, the front profile and awning arm are tilted when ascending
- Proven, maintenance-free technology
- All components made of forged and extruded aluminium



## Multi-section units – to shade especially large areas

The I/K 2000 also comes as a combined multi-section unit for very large terraces – coupled or in series.

- As a 2-part unit up to 1,200 cm
- Jockey cover or roller support with continuous fabric

# I/K/N 2000 Technology

I/K/N 2000 versions	I/K 2000	N 2000		
Technology				
Max. width, 1-section/2-section with jockey cover or roller support	700 cm/1,200 cm	600 cm		
Max. projection	400 cm	350 cm		
Cassette size (w x h) incl. standard bracket	198/200 mm x 211 mm	210 mm x 197 mm		
Coupled systems	0	—		
Gear drive	0	0		
Motor drive	• as standard	• as standard		
Angle of pitch on awning	5° to 40°	5° to 40°		
Installation alternatives	can be installed on walls, ceilings and rafters			
LED lighting: (Design light bar)	0	0		
LongLife arm	<ul> <li>as standard</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>as standard</li> </ul>		
Accessories				
Heating system Tempura/Tempura Quadra	0	0		
LED Design light bar	0	0		
BiSens Agido-3V product protection sensor	0	0		
Controls				
Radio control	0	0		
No remote	•	•		
Weather sensors				
Sun/wind sensor BiConnect BiSens SW-230 V	0	0		
Sun/wind sensor solar powered BiConnect BiSens SW-Solar+	0	0		
Sun/wind/rain sensor BiConnect-BiSens-SWR-230V	0	0		
Quality				
Tested up to	wind resistance class 2 according to DIN 13561 (wind strength 5 on the Beaufort scale)			

● standard ○ optional — unavailable

## I/K/N 2000 Controls

### weinor BiConnect radio controller

Product	Electronics	BiConnect control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
I/K/N 2000	I/K/N 2000 drive	BiRec receiver integrated into cassette	BiRec MA-K	<ul> <li>BiEasy 1M/5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> <li>1MW-3V wall transmitter</li> </ul>
I/K/N 2000 LED	I/K/N 2000 drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>BiRec combi-receiver for main drive and LED light bar (with integrated power supply pack) integrated into light bar</li> <li>Dimmable LED</li> </ul>	BiRec MA-K and BiRec LED	<ul> <li>BiEasy 5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> </ul>
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	<ul> <li>Dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Installation of the reciever in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	BiRec HD	<ul> <li>BiEasy 5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> </ul>

Requires: awning with BiConnect remote control and sensors require a BiEasy 1M, 5M or 15M Go!

## Somfy io-homecontrol® radio technology

Product	Electronics	Somfy io-homecontrol control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
I/K/N 2000	I/K/N 2000 drive	Somfy io remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette	Somfy io remote-controlled motor	<ul> <li>Situo 1 io Pure II/Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 io Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>
I/K/N 2000 LED	I/K/N 2000 drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy io remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for the LED light bar (with downstream power supply pack) integrated into light bar</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	Somfy io remote-controlled motor and io Lighting Receiver Variation on/off	Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	<ul> <li>Not dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Installation of the reciever in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	Heating Slim Receiver on/off io 2KW STAS3/STAK3	<ul> <li>Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 io Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>

## Somfy RTS radio technology

Product	Electronics	Somfy RTS control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
I/K/N 2000	I/K/N 2000 drive	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor	<ul> <li>Situo 1 RTS Pure II/Situo 1 Soliris RTS Pure II/Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 RTS Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>
I/K/N 2000 LED	I/K/N 2000 drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for the LED light bar (with downstream power supply pack) integrated into light bar</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor and Lighting Slim Receiver RTS	Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	<ul> <li>Not dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Installation of the reciever in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	Heating Slim Receiver RTS Plug	Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter

#### I/K/N 2000 Controls

### Hard wired with Somfy control

Product	Electronics	Hard wired Somfy control	Control
I/K/N 2000	I/K/N 2000 drive	Somfy control for awning drive	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno
I/K/N 2000 LED	I/K/N 2000 drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy control for awning drive</li> <li>Switch on site for the LED light bar</li> <li>LED power supply pack integrated into light bar</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno and suitable light switch (on site)
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	Not dimmable	Suitable switch (on site)

## Hard wired (existing switch/power supply on site)

Product	Electronics	Hard wired control	Control
I/K/N 2000	I/K/N 2000 drive	Awning switch for the awning drive	e.g. double rocker switch switch (on site)
1/K/N 2000 LED	I/K/N 2000 drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Awning switch for the awning drive</li> <li>Switch on site for the LED light bar</li> <li>LED power supply pack integrated into light bar</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	e.g. double rocker switch and suitable light switch (on site)
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	Not dimmable	Suitable switch (on site)



#### Note:

Please see the "Accessories" technical brochure for further details regarding the drive and control.



#### Site measurements – determining the projection and head clearance height

- Find the projection by looking in the "Projection" table for the terrace depth.
- Using the projection from the table and the required angle of pitch, consult the "head clearance height" table for the head clearance height. This head clearance height refers to an installation height of 300 cm.
- Add/subtract the difference between 300 cm and the actual installation height to/from the head clearance height in the table.

#### Terrace depth in cm Angle of pitch 150 250 300 350 400 200 5° 150 250 300 350 400 200 15° 160 210 260 310 360 400 25° 170 220 270 330 390 400

#### Determining the projection

Projection in cm (rounded figures)

This table can be used to find the awning projection for any given horizontal patio depth.

#### Determining the head clearance height

Angle of	Projection in cm						
pitch	150	200	250	300	350	400	
5°	270	270	270	260	260	250	
15°	250	240	220	210	200	180	
25°	220	200	180	160	140	120	

Head clearance height in cm (rounded figures)

This table is used to find the head clearance heights for various projections when the angle of pitch is  $5^{\circ}$ ,  $15^{\circ}$  or  $25^{\circ}$ .

This table is based on the example of an installation height of 300 cm (upper edge of awning).

### Wall bracket

#### Sizes and bracket recommendations



Width	Number Projection in cm (irregular figures possible)						
in cm	of arms	150	200	250	300	350	400
- 250	2						
251 – 300	2						
301 – 350	2		•				
351 – 400	2		•				
401 – 450	2						
451 – 500	2						
501 – 550	2						
551 – 600	2						
601 – 650	2						
651 – 700	3	•	•	•			

#### Installation on C20/25 concrete walls

with a casing of up to 200 mm, wind resistance class 2 and a permissible centric tensile load for anchor bolts of 5.71 kN.

- 2 I/K/N 2000 standard wall brackets, 85 mm
- 4 I/K 2000 wall brackets 85 mm
- 2+1 I/K 2000 wall brackets 2 (260) + 1 (85)
- ▲ 2 I/K/N 2000 standard wall brackets, 85 mm
- ▲ 5 I/K/N 2000 wall brackets 85 mm and
- ▲ 7 Standard wall brackets 85 mm



### Position of wall brackets and cassette I/K 2000

#### Wall bracket 85 mm on both sides (KS1 and KS2)



#### Wall bracket 85 mm outside (KS1)



#### Wall bracket 85 mm inside (KS2)



Notes: KS1 = outside bracket KS2 = inside bracket KS3 = centre bracket

### Position of wall brackets and cassette I/K 2000

#### Wall bracket 260 mm on both sides (KS1 and KS2)



#### Wall bracket 260 mm outside (KS1)



#### Wall bracket 260 mm inside (KS2)



Notes: KS1 = outside bracket KS2 = inside bracket KS3 = centre bracket

### **Cross-sections**

#### I 2000 (without back plate)



#### K2000 (with back plate)



01

### **Cross-sections**

#### I 2000 (without back plate) niche installation



#### K2000 with gear box (with back plate)



#### N 2000



#### I 2000 (without back plate) with LED Design light bar



#### I 2000 (with back plate) with LED Design light bar



### Installation on walls, ceilings and rafters is possible

Its dimensions mean that the K2000 can be mounted in a wide range of ways: not only on a wall but also on a ceiling or a rafter. The I2000, open at the rear, is designed for wall installation, while the N 2000 is intended as a special product for niches. The brackets are made of extruded, powder-coated aluminium.

#### Wall mounting – brackets



Side view with 85 mm wall bracket

## Wall mounting – mounting plates



Mounting plate 660 x 300 x 15 mm





Position of the mounting plates using the  $I/K 2000500 \times 300 \text{ cm}^*$  as an example.



Mounting plate 660 x 390 x 15 mm



Position of the mounting plates using the I/K 2000 500 x 300 cm\* as an example.



\* Depending on the width of the awning, the positioning of the mounting plates may vary.



Mounting plate 250 x 290 x 15 mm



### Minimum spacing distances for installation





Type N niche installation

### Ceiling mounting







Type I und Type K with niche installation



## **Rafter mounting**







Right-hand rafter bracket



Rafter bracket with mounting plate for right-hand rafter weinor recommends using mounting plates for rafter brackets



Rafter bracket



#### **Extraction forces**

The extraction force is the force with which the weight of the awning and the wind load pull on each upper fixing. The tables indicate this force in N per upper fixing. It varies depending on the awning size and the wall bracket/mounting plate used.

Selecting the wall bracket and anchoring system:

1. Consult relevant table for extraction force per fixing for selected awning size.

2. Select a wall bracket/mounting plate for which there is fixing material which can resist the indicated extraction force. Remember to take into account the spacing, the area which will be damaged if the fixing breaks out, the type of fixing material used and the mounting base.

See separate bracket overview for other bases

- 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm) plus 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm) as a central bracket from 401 cm. 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm) per awning arm,
- Fasteners: 4 in all 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm) plus 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm) as a central bracket from 401 cm, 2 standard wall brackets (85 mm)
- per awning arm, Fasteners: 8 in all or
- 1 wall bracket (260 mm) plus 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm) as a central bracket from 401 cm, 1 wall bracket (260 mm) per awning arm, Fasteners: 8 in all
- 1 wall bracket (260 mm) plus 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm) as a central bracket from 401 cm, 2 wall brackets (260 mm) per awning arm,
- Fasteners: 16 in all Mounting plate (280 x 240 mm) incl. 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm), standard wall bracket (85 mm)
- incl. base plate, Fasteners: 8 in all

Installation on C20/25 concrete walls with a casing of up to 200 mm, wind resistance class 2 and a permissible centric tensile load for anchor bolts of 5.71 kN.

Width	Projection in cm					
in cm	150	200	250	300	350	400
	932	1979	1955			
250	466	990	978			
250	233	495	489			
	270	400	568			
	1076	1595	2257	2971		
200	538	798	1129	1486		
300	269	399	564	743		
	312	462	654	862		
	1220	1811	2560	3372	4399	
250	610	906	1280	1686	2200	
300	305	453	640	843	1100	
	354	526	742	978	1276	
	1364	2028	2862	3773	4912	6908
400	682	1014	1431	1887	2456	3454
400	341	507	716	943	1228	1727
	396	588	830	1094	1424	2004
	1508	2244	3164	4174	5425	7653*
450	754	1122	1582	2087	2713	3827
430	377	561	791	1044	1356	1913
	438	650	918	1210	1574	2220
	1652	2461	3466	4575	6736	8398*
500	826	1231	1733	2288	3368	4199
500	413	615	867	1144	1684	2100
	480	714	1006	1326	1954	2436
	1796	2677	3768	5533	7331*	9143*
550	898	1339	1884	2767	3666	4572
550	449	669	942	1383	1833	2286
	520	776	1092	1634	2126	2868
	1940	2894	4070	6095	7927*	9888*
600	970	1447	2035	3048	3964	4944
000	485	724	1018	1524	1982	2472
	562	840	1180	1768	2298	3084
	2085	3110	4925	6558	8522*	10633*
650	1043	1555	2463	3249	4261	5317
0.50	521	778	1231	1640	2131	2658
	604	902	1428	1902	2472	3300
	1486	2217	3514	4680	6079	7585
700	743	1109	1757	2340	3040	3793
/00	372	554	879	1170	1520	1896
	430	642	1018	1358	1762	2200

\* 2 brackets required per awning arm



F = force

#### **Extraction forces**

#### Ceiling installation (on C20/25 concrete)

Extraction force in N per upper fastener in ceiling bracket

Width	Projection in cm						
in cm	150	200	250	300	350	400	
250	1035	1524	2159	2846	3741		
250	518	762	1080	1423	1871		
200	1202	1771	2500	3297	4318		
300	601	886	1250	1649	2159		
250	1370	2017	2841	3749	4896		
300	685	1009	1421	1875	2448		
400	1537	2263	3182	4200	5473	7650*	
400	769	1132	1591	2100	2737	3825	
450	1705	2510	3523	4652	6051*	8483*	
450	853	1255	1762	2326	3026	4242	
500	1852	2756	3864	5103	7473*	9316*	
500	926	1378	1932	2552	3737	4658	
550	2039	3002	4205	6239*	8138*	10149*	
550	1020	1501	2103	3120	4069	5075	
600	2207	3249	4546	6755*	8803*	10982*	
000	1104	1625	2273	3378	4402	5491	
650	2374	3495	5451	7270*	9467*	11815*	
050	1187	1748	2726	3635	4734	5907**	
700	1278	2495	3891	5190	6755	8433	
/00	639	1248	1946	2595	3378	4217	

1 ceiling bracket with standard wall bracket (85 mm), 1 ceiling bracket with standard wall bracket as central bracket from 401 cm,

1 ceiling bracket with standard wall bracket (85 mm) per awning arm,

Fasteners: 4 in all 1 ceiling bracket with standard wall bracket (85 mm), 1 ceiling bracket with standard wall bracket as a central bracket from 401 cm, 2 ceiling brackets with standard wall brackets (85 mm) per

awning arm, Fasteners: 8 in all

F = force

1 rafter bracket plus 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm), one of each for left and right, 1 rafter bracket plus 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm) as central bracket from a width of 401 cm 1 rafter bracket plus 1 mounting plate for rafters plus 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm), one of each for right and left, 1 rafter bracket plus 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm) plate for rafters plus 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm) as a central bracket from a width of 401 cm



Rafter mounting

\* 2 brackets required per arm

Shear forces in N per bracket for rafter mounting

\*\* Use dowels with permissible extraction force > 5.71 kN

Width	Projection in cm						
in cm	150	200	250	300	350	400	
250	1352	2004					
250	621	885					
200	1562	2319	3294				
500	721	1027	1421				
250	1773	2634	3734	4940			
200	821	1169	1614	2102			
400	1983	2949	4174	5526	7223		
400	921	1312	1807	2353	3033	4215	
450	2194	3264	4614	6112	7962	11236	
430	1021	1454	2000	2605	3353	4672	
500	2405	3579	5054	6698	4916	6157	
500	1121	1596	2193	2857	2062	2564	
550	2615	3894	5495	8181	5350	6704	
3.30	1221	1738	2386	3472	2245	2793	
600	2826	4209	5935	8853	5785	7250	
000	1321	1881	2578	3758	2429	3021	
650	3036	4524	7114	9525	6220	7796	
0.00	1421	2023	3070	4045	5223	3249	
700	2389	3499	5431	7223	4715	5892	
700	1174	1623	2404	3129	2011	2487	



Semi-cassette awning

## Semina

The **Semina** combines a fresh, youthful design with proven technology and reliable quality. The semi-cassette provides for safety, the safe protection of the fabric and technology and therefore also for an exceptionally long service life. The functions, look and profitability of the Semina have been systematically optimised and coordinated down to the very last detail. For a consistently intelligent solution made by weinor.



**Compact semi-cassette:** Great on price, functionality and design

> **Stable, elegant brackets:** With easy access to adjust the pitch



Wall mounting

Ceiling mounting

Rafter mounting

Optional LED Design light bar: Highly energy-efficient



# Semina Highlights



**Integrated rain gutter:** Water drain

Wind lock safety device: Well-sheltered even in winds



**weinor LongLife arm:** Very durable and low-noise



## Semina Benefits



## The compact semi-cassette – great on price, functionality and design

Uncomplicated but high quality – the compact semi-cassette on the weinor Semina reliably protects the fabric and technology.

- Simple installation
- Compact cassette size
- Outstanding quality



## Integrated rain gutter – reliably drains off rainwater

The integrated rain gutter systematically drains off rainwater.

- Protects the fabric and the technology
- Reliably drains off any rainwater via the side caps on the projection profile when retracted
- Minimum pitch of 14° required for use in showers



## Wind lock safety device – well-sheltered even in winds

The ultramodern technology prevents the awning from lifting up when wind gusts from below.

- Tilting arm mechanism with patented wind lock safety device
- Proven, maintenance-free technology
- Forged and extruded aluminium components



#### LED Design light bar – 30,000 hours of lighting with minimal energy consumption (optional)

Select LED components for top weinor quality:

- Atmospheric light thanks to special glass lenses
- Highly energy-efficient
- Operating life of 30,000 hours
- Radio-controlled dimmer using BiConnect
- Installs using an adjustable bracket fitted to the support pipe
- Easy-change LEDs

# Semina Technology

	Semina
Technology	
Max. width	700 cm
Max. projection	350 cm
Cassette size (w x h) incl. standard bracket	204 mm x 204 mm
Coupled systems	—
Gear drive	$\odot$ (1-unit system, with a max. width of 600 cm/max. projection of 350 cm)
Motor drive	<ul> <li>as standard</li> </ul>
Angle of pitch on awning	5° to 40°
Installation alternatives	can be installed on walls, ceilings and rafters
LongLife arm	<ul> <li>as standard</li> </ul>
Accessories	
Heating system Tempura/Tempura Quadra	0
LED Design light bar	0
BiSens Agido-3V product protection sensor	0
Controls	
Radio control	0
No remote	
Weather sensors	
Sun/wind sensor BiConnect BiSens SW-230 V	0
Sun/wind sensor solar powered BiConnect BiSens SW-Solar+	0
Sun/wind/rain sensor BiConnect-BiSens-SWR-230V	0
Quality	
Tested up to	wind resistance class 2 according to DIN 13561 (wind strength 5 on the Beaufort scale)

● standard ○ optional — unavailable

## Semina Controls

### weinor BiConnect radio controller

Product	Electronics	BiConnect control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
Semina	Semina drive	BiConnect remote-controlled motor integrated into awning	Elero SunTop-868 remote-controlled motor	<ul> <li>BiEasy 1M/5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> <li>1MW-3V wall transmitter</li> </ul>
Semina	Semina drive	BiRec receiver integrated into cassette	BiRec MA-K	<ul><li>BiEasy 1M hand transmitter</li><li>1MW-3V wall transmitter</li></ul>
Semina LED	Semina drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>BiConnect remote-controlled motor for main drive integrated into awning</li> <li>Additional BiConnect receiver for LED light bar (with integrated power supply pack) integrated into light bar</li> <li>Dimmable LED</li> </ul>	Elero SunTop-868 remote-controlled motor and BiRec LED	<ul> <li>BiEasy 5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> </ul>
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	<ul> <li>Dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Installation of the reciever in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	BiRec HD	<ul> <li>BiEasy 5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> </ul>

Requires: awning with BiConnect remote control and sensors require a BiEasy 1M, 5M or 15M Go!

### Somfy io-homecontrol® radio technology

Product	Electronics	Somfy io-homecontrol control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
Semina	Semina drive	<ul> <li>Somfy io remote-controlled motor integrated into awning</li> </ul>	Somfy io remote-controlled motor	<ul> <li>Situo 1 io Pure II/Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 io Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>
Semina LED	Semina drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy io remote-controlled motor integrated into awning</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for the LED light bar (with downstream power supply pack) integrated into light bar</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	Somfy io remote-controlled motor and io Lighting Receiver Variation on/off	Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	<ul> <li>Not dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Installation of the reciever in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	Heating Slim Receiver on/off io 2KW STAS3/STAK3	<ul> <li>Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 io Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>

### Somfy RTS radio technology

Product	Electronics	Somfy RTS control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
Semina	Semina drive	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor integrated into awning	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor	<ul> <li>Situo 1 RTS Pure II/Situo 1 Soliris RTS Pure II/Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 RTS Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>
Semina LED	Semina drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor integrated into awning</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for the LED light bar (with downstream power supply pack) integrated into light bar</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor and Lighting Slim Receiver RTS	Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	<ul> <li>Not dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Installation of the reciever in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	Heating Slim Receiver RTS Plug	Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5     Soliris RTS Pure II hand     transmitter

### Hard wired with Somfy control

Product	Electronics	Hard wired Somfy control	Control
Semina	Semina drive	Somfy control for awning drive	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno
Semina LED	Semina drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy control for awning drive</li> <li>Switch on site for the LED light bar</li> <li>LED power supply pack integrated into light bar</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno and suitable light switch (on site)
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	Not dimmable	Suitable switch (on site)

## Hard wired (existing switch/power supply on site)

Product	Electronics	Hard wired control	Control
Semina	Semina drive	Awning switch for the awning drive	e.g. double rocker switch switch (on site)
Semina LED	Semina drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Awning switch for the awning drive</li> <li>Switch on site for the LED light bar</li> <li>LED power supply pack integrated into light bar</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	e.g. double rocker switch and suitable light switch (on site)
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	Not dimmable	Suitable switch (on site)



Note:

Please see the "Accessories" technical brochure for further details regarding the drive and control.

### Semina Controls



Sometimes, a gear/crank operated awning is a possible alternative: with smaller awnings (1-unit system, with a max. width of 600 cm/max. projection of 350 cm), for example, or rarely-used units, or where connecting to a power source is a complicated solution. The cost of an awning without a motor as standard is correspondingly lower.

- Sprag clutch with easy-to-set end stop
- No power source required
- Inconspicuous components



#### Site measurements – determining the projection and head clearance height

- Find the projection by looking in the "Projection" table for the terrace depth.
- Using the projection from the table and the required angle of pitch, consult the "head clearance height" table for the head clearance height. This head clearance height refers to an installation height of 300 cm.
- Add/subtract the difference between 300 cm and the actual installation height to/from the head clearance height in the table.

#### Terrace depth in cm Angle of pitch 150 250 300 350 400 200 5° 150 250 300 350 400 200 15° 160 210 260 310 360 400 25° 170 220 270 330 390 400

#### Determining the projection

Projection in cm (rounded figures)

This table can be used to find the awning projection for any given horizontal patio depth.

#### Determining the head clearance height

Angle of pitch	Projection in cm					
	150	200	250	300	350	400
5°	270	270	260	260	250	250
15°	240	230	220	210	200	180
25°	220	200	180	160	140	110

Head clearance height in cm (rounded figures)

This table is used to find the head clearance heights for various projections when the angle of pitch is  $5^{\circ}$ ,  $15^{\circ}$  or  $25^{\circ}$ .

This table is based on the example of an installation height of 300 cm (upper edge of awning).

## Wall bracket

#### Sizes and bracket recommendations



Width	Number	Projection in cm (irregular figures possible)				
in cm	of arms	150	200	250	300	350
195 – 200	2	•				
201 – 250	2	•				
251 – 300	2	•	•	•		
301 – 350	2	•	•	•		
351 – 400	2	•	•	•	•	•
401 – 450	2	•	٠	•	•	
451 – 500	2	•	٠	•	•	
501 – 550	2	•	٠	•	•	
551 – 600	2	•	٠	•		
601 - 650	2					
651 – 700	3					

#### Installation on C20/25 concrete walls

with a casing of up to 200 mm, wind resistance class 2 and a permissible centric tensile load for anchor bolts of 5.71 kN.

- 2 Semina standard wall brackets 85 mm • 3 Semina standard wall brackets 85 mm
- ▲ 5 Semina standard wall brackets 85 mm
- ▲ 7 Semina standard wall brackets 85 mm



### Position of wall brackets and Semina

#### Wall bracket 85 mm on both sides (KS1 and KS2)



#### Wall bracket 85 mm outside (KS1)



#### Wall bracket 85 mm inside (KS2)



Notes: KS1 = outside bracket KS2 = inside bracket KS3 = centre bracket

### Position of wall brackets and Semina

#### System width Centre unit KS3 (always from left) 145 KS2 right = min. 585 / max. 805 KS2 left = min. 585 / max. 805 KS1 right min. 205 / KS1 left 380 100 100 min. 205 max. 425 max. 425 4 Ѣ Ф Ф ф Ф Ф ф E T I I φ φ ¢ 0 ¢ φ φ Φ ώ B 175 205 205 175 Centre left right Arm left Arm right min. 380 / max. 600 min. 380 / max. 600

#### Wall bracket 260 mm on both sides (KS1 and KS2)

#### Wall bracket 260 mm outside (KS1)



#### Wall bracket 260 mm inside (KS2)



Notes: KS1 = outside bracket KS2 = inside bracket KS3 = centre bracket

## **Cross-sections**

#### Semina



#### Semina with LED Design light bar



## Semina Installation

#### Installation on walls, ceilings and rafters is possible

The tried-and-tested carrier bar construction makes for uncomplicated and flexible installation: simply align and screw down the brackets, then slide the awning onto the carrier bar in the brackets and secure in place. Done! The brackets and mounting plates are made of extruded, powder-coated aluminium.

#### Wall mounting – brackets



Side view with 85 mm wall bracket

#### Semina Installation

## Wall mounting – mounting plates



Mounting plate 660 x 300 x 15 mm





Position of the mounting plates using the Semina 500 x 300 cm\* as an example.



Mounting plate 660 x 390 x 15 mm



Position of the mounting plates using the Semina 500 x 300 cm\* as an example.



\* Depending on the width of the awning, the positioning of the mounting plates may vary.



Mounting plate 250 x 290 x 15 mm





### Semina Installation

## Minimum spacing distances for installation



## Ceiling mounting







-



42.5 ⊕

150




#### Semina Installation

### **Rafter mounting**



Rafter bracket

120

Rafter installation without a mounting plate



Side view of rafter bracket installation



#### **Extraction forces**

The extraction force is the force with which the weight of the awning and the wind load pull on each upper fixing. The tables indicate this force in N per upper fixing. It varies depending on the awning size and the wall bracket/mounting plate used.

Selecting the wall bracket and anchoring system:

1. Consult relevant table for extraction force per fixing for selected awning size.

2. Select a wall bracket/mounting plate for which there is fixing material which can resist the indicated extraction force. Remember to take into account the spacing, the area which will be damaged if the fixing breaks out, the type of fixing material used and the mounting base.

See separate bracket overview for other bases.

1 standard wall bracket (85 mm)
1 standard wall bracket (85 mm)
per awning arm
Fasteners: 2 per bracket
1 standard wall bracket (85 mm)
2 standard wall brackets (85 mm)
per awning arm

Fixings: 2 per bracket or

1 wall bracket (260 mm) plus 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm) as a central bracket, 1 wall bracket (260 mm) per awning arm Fixings: 10 in all 1 wall bracket (260 mm) plus 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm) as a central bracket,

2 wall brackets (260 mm) per awning arm Fixings: 10 in all Mounting plate (240 x 280 mm) incl. 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm), Standard wall bracket (85 mm) incl. base plate Fixings: 4 in all **Installation on C20/25 concrete walls** with a casing of up to 200 mm, wind resistance class 2 and a permissible centric tensile load for anchor bolts of 5.71 kN.

Width	Projection in o	Projection in cm						
in cm	150	200	250	300	350			
	932	1979	1955					
250	466	990	978					
250	233	495	489					
	270	400	568					
300	1076	1595	2257	2971				
	538	798	1129	1486				
	269	399	564	743				
	312	462	654	862				
	1220	1811	2560	3372	4399			
350	610	906	1280	1686	2200			
	305	453	640	843	1100			
	354	526	742	978	1276			
	1364	2028	2862	3773	4912			
400	682	1014	1431	1887	2456			
	341	507	716	943	1228			
	396	588	830	1094	1424			
450	1508	2244	3164	4174	5425			
	754	1122	1582	2087	2713			
	377	561	791	1044	1356			
	438	650	918	1210	1574			
	1652	2461	3466	4575	6736			
500	826	1231	1733	2288	3368			
500	413	615	867	1144	1684			
	480	714	1006	1326	1954			
	1796	2677	3768	5533	7331*			
	898	1339	1884	2767	3666			
550	449	669	942	1383	1833			
	520	776	1092	1634	2126			
	1940	2894	4070	6095	7927*			
C00	970	1447	2035	3048	3964			
600	485	724	1018	1524	1982			
	562	840	1180	1768	2298			
	2085	3110	4925	6558	8522*			
650	1043	1555	2463	3279	4261			
050	521	778	1231	1640	2131			
	604	902	1428	1902	2472			
	1486	2217	3514	4680	6079			
700	743	1109	1757	2340	3040			
/00	372	554	879	1170	1520			
	430	642	1018	1358	1762			

\* 2 standard wall brackets (85 mm) per arm required



### **Extraction forces**



Ceiling bracket with wall bracket Fixings: 2\* per bracket Ceiling bracket with wall bracket Starting from 5 brackets Fixings: 2\* per bracket

Width	Projection in cm						
in cm	150	200	250	300	350		
250	1035	1524	2159	2846	3741		
	518	762	1080	1423	1871		
200	1202	1771	2500	3297	4318		
300	601	886	1250	1649	2159		
250	1370	2017	2841	3749	4896		
300	685	1009	1421	1875	2448		
400	1537	2263	3182	4200	5473		
400	769	1132	1591	2100	2737		
450	1705	2510	3523	4652	6051*		
450	853	1255	1762	2326	3026		
500	1852	2756	3864	5103	7473*		
500	926	1378	1932	2552	3737		
550	2039	3002	4205	6239*	8138*		
550	1020	1501	2103	3120	4069		
600	2207	3249	4546	6755*	8803*		
000	1104	1625	2273	3378	4402		
650	2374	3495	5451	7270*	9467*		
0.0	1187	1748	2726	3635	4734		
700	1278	2495	3891	5190	6755		
700	639	1248	1946	2595	3378		

## **Ceiling mounting (on concrete C20/25)** Extraction forces in N for ceiling mounting + front mounting on concrete ceilings

\* 2 brackets required per awning arm



F = force

Rafter bracket plus standard wall bracket Rafter bracket plus

mounting plate for rafter bracket, plus standard wall bracket



**Rafter mounting** 

Æ

Shear forces in N per bracket for rafter mounting

Width	Projection in c	Projection in cm						
in cm	150	200	250	300	350			
250	1352	2004						
	621	885						
300	1562	2319	3294					
	721	1027	1421					
350	1773	2634	3734	4940				
	821	1169	1614	2102				
400	1983	2949	4174	5526	7223			
	921	1312	1807	2353	3033			
450	2194	3264	4614	6112	7962			
	1021	1454	2000	2605	3353			
E00	2405	3579	5054	6698	4916			
500	1121	1596	2193	2857	2062			
550	2615	3894	5495	8181	5350			
220	1221	1738	2386	3472	2245			
600	2826	4209	5935	8853	5785			
600	1321	1881	2578	3758	2429			
650	3036	4524	7114	9525	6220			
050	1421	2023	3070	4045	5223			
700	2389	3499	5431	7223	4715			
/00	1174	1623	2404	3129	2011			







**Open awning** 

## **Topas Topas** with roof | without roof

The **Topas** is a classic entry-level awning for anyone wanting to save money without sacrificing quality. Its uncomplicated technology makes it stable and wind-resistant. When open, the awning stands out for its extreme flexibility: with or without a protective roof, it can be installed in various ways to fit into all kinds of different structural situations and applications.



Topas with roof



Topas without roof

Mounting options: Installation on walls, ceilings and rafters is possible





Wall mounting

Ceiling mounting

Rafter mounting

# Topas Highlights

Joined units: With roller supports



or jockey cover





weinor LongLife arm: Very durable and low-noise 01

# **Topas** Benefits



## Open or with a roof – classic design with the latest technology

With its simplified technology the weinor Topas is stable yet retains a wide variety of functions.

- Stable front profile
- with and without roof
- Large widths
- Wind-resistant
- Wide selection of fabrics



#### LED Design light bar – 30,000 hours of lighting with minimal energy consumption (optional)

Select LED components for top weinor quality:

- Atmospheric light thanks to special glass lenses
- Highly energy-efficient
- Operating life of 30,000 hours
- Radio-controlled dimmer using BiConnect
- Fitted to carrier bar using angle bracket
- Easy to service: simply replace individual LED lights without uninstalling the awning



## weinor LongLife Arm – durable, quiet operation

The weinor LongLife arm features an exceptionally robust high-tech belt.

- Tested to more than 100,000 cycles
- Extremely quiet operation
- No maintenance required
- Drop forged aluminium in joint light but highly robust



## Multi-section units – to shade especially large areas

The Topas also comes as a combined multi-section unit for very large terraces.

- As a 2-part unit up to 1,200 cm
- Jockey cover or roller support with continuous fabric

# **Topas** Technology

Topas versions	Topas with roof	Topas without roof
Technology		
Max. width, 1-section/2-section with jockey cover	700 cm/1,200 cm	700 cm/1,200 cm
Max. projection	400 cm	400 cm
Side limits (w x h) incl. standard bracket	220 mm x 210 mm	210 mm x 180 mm
Coupled systems	0	0
Motor drive	• as standard	• as standard
Angle of pitch on awning	5° to 40° *	5° to 40° *
Installation alternatives	can be installed on walls, ceilings and rafters	
LED lighting: (Design light bar)	0	0
LongLife arm	as standard	• as standard
Accessories		
Heating system Tempura/Tempura Quadra	0	0
LED Design light bar	0	0
BiSens Agido-3V product protection sensor	0	0
Controls		
Radio control	0	0
No remote	•	•
Weather sensors		
Sun/wind sensor BiConnect BiSens SW-230 V	0	0
Sun/wind sensor solar powered BiConnect BiSens SW-Solar+	0	0
Sun/wind/rain sensor BiConnect-BiSens-SWR-230V	0	0
Quality		

Tested up to

wind resistance class 1\*\* according to DIN 13561 (wind strength 4 on the Beaufort scale)

\* When the bracket is mounted on the inside of the folding arm, the awning's maximum pitch adjustment is 20°.

\*\* See awnings price list page 37

● standard ○ optional — unavailable

#### Topas – wind resistance classes 1–2



wind resistance class 2 wind resistance class 1

# **Topas** Controls

## weinor BiConnect radio controller

Product	Electronics	BiConnect control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
Topas	Topas drive	BiRec receiver integrated into cassette	Elero SunTop-868 remote-controlled motor	<ul> <li>BiEasy 1M/5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> <li>1MW-3V wall transmitter</li> </ul>
Topas	Topas drive	BiRec receiver integrated into cassette	BiRec MA-K	<ul><li>BiEasy 1M hand transmitter</li><li>1MW-3V wall transmitter</li></ul>
Topas LED	Topas drive and LED Design light bar	<ul> <li>BiRec receiver for main driv integrated into awning</li> <li>Additional BiConnect Empfängerreceiver for the LED light bar (with integrated power supply pack) integrated into light bar</li> <li>LED dimmbar</li> </ul>	Elero SunTop-868 remote-controlled motor and BiRec LED	<ul> <li>BiEasy 5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> </ul>
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	<ul> <li>Dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Installation of the reciever in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	BiRec HD	<ul> <li>BiEasy 5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> </ul>

Requires: awning with BiConnect remote control and sensors require a BiEasy 1M, 5M or 15M Go!

## Somfy io-homecontrol® radio technology

Product	Electronics	Somfy io-homecontrol control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
Topas	Topas drive	<ul> <li>Somfy io remote-controlled motor integrated into awning</li> </ul>	Somfy io remote-controlled motor	<ul> <li>Situo 1 io Pure II/Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 io Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>
Topas LED	Topas drive and LED Design light bar	<ul> <li>Somfy io remote-controlled motor integrated into awning</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for the LED light bar (with downstream power supply pack) integrated into light bar</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	Somfy io remote-controlled motor and io Lighting Receiver Variation on/off	Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	<ul> <li>Not dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Installation of the reciever in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	Heating Slim Receiver on/off io 2KW STAS3/STAK3	<ul> <li>Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 io Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>

### Somfy RTS radio technology

Product	Electronics	Somfy RTS control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
Topas	Topas drive	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor integrated into awning	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor	<ul> <li>Situo 1 RTS Pure II/Situo 1 Soliris RTS Pure II/Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 RTS Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>
Topas LED	Topas drive and LED Design light bar	<ul> <li>Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor integrated into awning</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for the LED light bar (with downstream power supply pack) integrated into light bar</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor and Lighting Slim Receiver RTS	Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	<ul> <li>Not dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Installation of the reciever in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	Heating Slim Receiver RTS Plug	Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5     Soliris RTS Pure II hand     transmitter

## Hard wired with Somfy control

Product	Electronics	Hard wired Somfy control	Control
Topas	Topas drive	Somfy control for awning drive	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno
Topas LED	Topas drive and LED Design light bar	<ul> <li>Somfy control for awning drive</li> <li>Switch on site for the LED light bar</li> <li>LED power supply pack integrated into the light bar</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno and suitable light switch (on site)
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	Not dimmable	Suitable switch (on site)

## Hard wired (existing switch/power supply on site)

Product	Electronics	Hard wired control	Control
Topas	Topas drive	Awning switch for the awning drive	e.g. double rocker switch switch (on site)
Topas LED	Topas drive and LED Design light bar	<ul> <li>Awning switch for the awning drive</li> <li>Switch on site for the LED light bar</li> <li>LED power supply pack integrated into the light bar</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	e.g. double rocker switch and suitable light switch (on site)
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	Not dimmable	Suitable switch (on site)



Note:

Please see the "Accessories" technical brochure for further details regarding the drive and control.

Some options are subject to a surcharge. For prices, please refer to the weinor awnings price list.



#### Site measurements – determining the projection and head clearance height

- Find the projection by looking in the "Projection" table for the terrace depth.
- Using the projection from the table and the required angle of pitch, consult the "head clearance height" table for the head clearance height. This head clearance height refers to an installation height of 300 cm.
- Add/subtract the difference between 300 cm and the actual installation height to/from the head clearance height in the table.

#### Determining the projection

Angle of	Terrace depth in cm						
pitch	150	200	250	300	350	400	
5°	150	200	250	300	350	400	
15°	160	210	260	310	360	400	
25°	170	220	280	330	390	400	

Projection in cm (rounded figures)

This table can be used to find the awning projection for any given horizontal patio depth.

#### Determining the head clearance height

Angle of	Projection in cm					
pitch	150	200	250	300	350	400
5°	270	270	270	260	260	250
15°	250	240	220	210	200	180
25°	220	200	180	160	140	120

Head clearance height in cm (rounded figures)

This table is used to find the head clearance heights for various projections when the angle of pitch is  $5^{\circ}$ ,  $15^{\circ}$  or  $25^{\circ}$ .

This table is based on the example of an installation height of 300 cm (upper edge of awning).

#### Wall bracket

#### Sizes and bracket recommendations



Width	Number of arms	Projection in cm (irregular figures possible)							
in cm		150	200	250	300	350	400		
- 250	2					•	•		
251 – 300	2					•	•		
301 – 350	2		•	•		•			
351 - 400	2								
401 - 450	2	•	•	•	•				
451 – 500	2	•	•	•	•				
501 – 550	2	•	•	•	•				
551 - 600	2	•	•	•					
601 - 650	2	•	•	•					
651 – 700	3								

#### Installation on C20/25 concrete walls

with a casing of up to 200 mm, wind resistance class 2 and a permissible centric tensile load for anchor bolts of 5.71 kN.

- 2 x Topas standard wall brackets 85 mm
- 3 Topas standard wall brackets 85 mm
- 4 Topas standard wall brackets 85 mm
- 5 x Topas standard wall brackets 85 mm
   7 x Topas standard wall brackets 85 mm

### Position of wall brackets and Topas



When the bracket is mounted on the inside of the folding arm, the awning's maximum pitch adjustment is 20°.

### Position of wall brackets and Topas

#### Wall bracket 85 mm on both sides (KS1 and KS2)



#### Wall bracket 85 mm outside (KS1)



#### Wall bracket 85 mm inside (KS2)



Notes: KS1 = outside bracket KS2 = inside bracket KS3 = centre bracket

#### Position of wall brackets and Topas

#### Wall bracket 260 mm on both sides (KS1 and KS2)



#### Wall bracket 260 mm outside (KS1)



#### Wall bracket 260 mm inside (KS2)



Notes: KS1 = outside bracket KS2 = inside bracket KS3 = centre bracket

## **Cross-sections**

#### Topas without roof



#### Topas with roof



## **Cross-sections**

#### Topas without roof with LED



#### Topas with roof with LED



## Installation on walls, ceilings and rafters is possible

Its dimensions mean that the Topas can be mounted in a wide range of ways: not only on a wall but also on a ceiling or a rafter. The brackets and mounting plates are made of extruded, powder-coated aluminium.

#### Wall mounting – brackets



Side view of Topas with roof fitted to a wall

216

## Wall mounting – mounting plates



Mounting plate 660 x 300 x 15 mm





Position of the mounting plates using the Topas 500 x 300 cm\* as an example.



Mounting plate 660 x 390 x 15 mm



Position of the mounting plates using the Topas 500 x 300 cm\* as an example.



\* Depending on the width of the awning, the positioning of the mounting plates may vary.



Mounting plate 250 x 290 x 15 mm





## Minimum spacing distances for installation



## **Ceiling mounting**









Ð



Side view of roofless Topas with sliding support bearing and compact ceiling bracket













### **Rafter mounting**



Rafter bracket

Side view of rafter installation with roofless Topas

#### **Extraction forces**

The extraction force is the force with which the weight of the awning and the wind load pull on each upper fixing. The tables indicate this force in N per upper fixing. It varies depending on the awning size and the wall bracket/mounting plate used.

Selecting the wall bracket and anchoring system:

1. Consult relevant table for extraction force per fixing for selected awning size.

2. Select a wall bracket/mounting plate for which there is fixing material which can resist the indicated extraction force. Remember to take into account the spacing, the area which will be damaged if the fixing breaks out, the type of fixing material used and the mounting base.

See separate bracket overview for other bases.

1 standard wall bracket (85 mm) plus 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm) as a central bracket from 401 cm. 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm) per awning arm, Fasteners: 4 in all 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm) plus 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm) as a central bracket from 401 cm, 2 standard wall brackets (85 mm) per awning arm, Fasteners: 8 in all 1 wall bracket (260 mm) plus 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm) as a central bracket from 401 cm,

1 wall bracket (260 mm) per awning arm, Fasteners: 8 in all

1 wall bracket (260 mm) plus 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm) as a central bracket from 401 cm, 2 wall brackets (260 mm) per awning arm, Fasteners: 16 in all Mounting plate (280 x 240 mm) incl. 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm), standard wall bracket (85 mm) incl. base plate, Fasteners: 8 in all **Installation on C20/25 concrete walls** with a casing of up to 200 mm, wind resistance class 2 and a permissible centric tensile load for anchor bolts of 5.71 kN.

Width	Projection in cm								
in cm	150	200	250	300	350	400			
	818	1232	1776	2359	3128	4399			
250	409	616	888	1180	1564	2200			
250	205	308	444	590	782	1100			
	238	358	516	684	908	1276			
	939	1419	2042	2716	3592	5088			
200	470	710	1021	1358	1796	2544			
300	235	355	511	679	898	1272			
	272	412	592	788	1042	1476			
	1060	1606	2308	3074	4055	5776			
250	530	803	1154	1537	2028	2888			
350	265	402	577	769	1014	1444			
	308	466	670	892	1176	1676			
	1181	1792	2573	3432	4518	6464			
400	591	896	1287	1716	2259	3232			
400	295	448	643	858	1130	1616			
	342	520	746	996	1310	1874			
	1303	1979	2839	3790	4982	7253*			
450	652	990	1420	1558	2491	3627			
	326	495	710	948	1246	1813			
	378	574	824	1100	1444	2074			
	1424	2166	3104	4148	6244	7541*			
500	712	1083	1552	2074	3122	3771			
500	356	542	776	1037	1561	1885			
	412	628	900	1202	1810	2274			
	1545	2352	3370	5163	6789*	8529*			
550	773	1176	1685	2582	3395	4265			
550	386	588	843	1291	1697	2132			
	448	682	978	1498	1968	2474			
	1666	2539	3635	5582	7335*	9217*			
<b>COO</b>	833	1270	1818	2791	3668	4609			
600	417	635	909	1396	1834	2304			
	484	736	1054	1618	2128	2674			
	1787	2726	4455	6002	7880*	9906*			
650	894	1363	2228	3001	3940	4953			
650	447	682	1114	1501	1970	2477			
	518	790	1292	1740	2286	2872			
	1272	1941	3176	4281	5617*	7063*			
700	636	971	1588	2141	2809	3532			
/00	318	485	794	1070	1404	1766			
	370	562	922	1242	1630	2050			

\* 2 brackets required per awning arm



F = force

#### **Extraction forces**

#### Ceiling installation (on C20/25 concrete)

Extraction force in N per upper fastener in ceiling bracket

Width	Projection in cm									
in cm	150	200	250	300	350	400				
250	917	1367	1963	2612	3469	4875				
250	459	684	982	1306	1735	2438				
200	1060	1582	2264	3016	3991	5645				
500	530	791	1132	1508	1996	2823				
250	1204	1796	2565	3419	4512	6414				
550	602	898	1283	1710	2256	3207				
400	1347	2010	2867	3823	5034	7183				
400	674	1005	1434	1912	2517	3592				
450	1490	2225	3168	4226	5556	7953*				
450	745	1113	1584	2113	2778	3977				
500	1634	2439	3469	4630	6929*	8722*				
	817	1220	1735	2315	3465	4361				
FFO	1777	2654	3770	5719	7533*	9492*				
550	889	1327	1885	2860	3767	4746				
600	1921	2868	4071	6187	8142*	10261*				
000	961	1434	2036	3094	4071	5131				
650	2064	3083	4937	6654	8751*	11053*				
050	1032	1542	2469	3327	4376	5527				
700	1472	2198	3522	4748	6239	7867				
700	736	1099	1761	2374	3120	3934				

1 ceiling bracket with standard wall bracket (85 mm), 1 ceiling bracket with standard wall bracket as central bracket from 401 cm, 1 ceiling bracket with standard wall bracket (85 mm) per awning arm, Fasteners: 4 in all

1 ceiling bracket, compact, 1 ceiling bracket, compact as central bracket from 401 cm, 1 ceiling bracket, compact per awning arm, Fasteners: 4 in all



F = force

\* 2 brackets required per awning arm



1 rafter bracket plus 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm), one of each for left and right, 1 rafter bracket plus 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm) as central bracket from a width of 401 cm 1 rafter bracket plus 1 mounting plate for rafters plus

1 standard wall bracket (85 mm), one of each for right and left, 1 rafter bracket plus 1 mounting plate for rafters plus 1 standard wall bracket (85 mm) as a central bracket from a width of 401 cm



**Rafter mounting** Shear forces in N per bracket for rafter mounting

Mr. Ich	Projection in	Projection in cm									
width in cm	150	200	250	300	350	400					
250	1195	1796									
2.50	558	801									
200	1374	2069	2982								
500	645	926	1295								
250	1553	2342	3370	4504							
350	732	1051	1467	1925							
400	1732	2615	3757	5027	6642						
400	819	1176	1638	2152	2805						
450	1911	2888	4145	5550	7322	10493					
450	907	1302	1810	2378	3094	4377					
500	2090	3160	4532	6073	4546	5735					
500	994	1427	1981	2604	1913	2394					
FFO	2269	3433	4920	7496	4944	6239					
550	1081	1552	2153	3195	2081	2605					
600	2448	3706	5307	8103	5342	6749					
600	1168	1677	2325	3455	2249	2816					
650	2627	3979	6434	8710	5740	7247					
UCO	1256	1802	2795	3716	2418	3027					
700	2095	3108	4942	6638	8749	11007					
/00	1056	1465	2207	2893	3746	4659					

# Pergola awnings





Pergola awning

## Plaza Viva Plaza Viva Stretch/LED | OptiStretch/LED

**Plaza Viva** stands for reliable sun and rain protection on the patio. It is incredibly wind-resistant and integrates subtly into the overall look of the house. Not forgetting its practical use on facades that don't have enough load-bearing capacity to mount a folding arm awning. Technical innovations such as the optional lowerable telescopic post, the OptiStretch version, integrated LED lighting and gear handle operated Valance Plus leave almost nothing to be desired.

#### 3-part rain protection system



**Compensation joint:** Reduces the load on the entire construction when lowering the post



Wall bracket with floating bearings: Also reduces the load on the awning when lowering the post



**Telescopic post:** Can be lowered using the gear handle to drain rain off reliably



No visible fixings: Elegant and slimline design **Plaza Viva Stretch:** Held captive on 2 sides, with light gap, with corner reinforcemen



**Plaza Viva OptiStretch:** Held captive on 4 sides, no light gap, with strip reinforcement

# Plaza Viva Highlights

New flat rope: Quiet and extremely tear-resistant





Service opening: Easier access to the drive and control components with BiConnect



**Integrated LED lighting:** Moody patio lighting

# Plaza Viva Benefits



## Large surface protection from the sun – thanks to sturdy aluminium posts

The Plaza Viva stands on solid posts. Making it suitable sun protection for large terraces and offering reliable protection against surging winds.

- For larger dimensions up to 30 m<sup>2</sup>
- Can also be installed on difficult and insulated facades due to reduced load acting on the fixings in the wall brackets
- Wind-resistant up to wind force 6 on the Beaufort scale
- Elegant design, almost no visible screws



## Telescopic post for rain to drain off reliably (optional)

The optional telescopic post can be really easily fully lowered on one side using the gear handle thus ensuring that rain drains off easily with a pitch awning of 4° or more.

- Just one telescopic post possible per construction
- Reliable rain protection
- No pooling

Please observe the important details in the Plaza Viva telescopic post section.



#### Compensation joint and floating bearing

The combination of a compensation joint and wall bracket with floating bearings reduces the load on the entire construction when the awning is lowered using the gear handle.

• Rain drains off reliably (no danger of pooling)



#### **Clever Stretch and OptiStretch versions**

**Plaza Viva Stretch:** the well positioned and even fabric creates a cosy atmosphere.

• **Stretch:** held captive on 2 sides, cost effective solution, easy to install

**Plaza Viva OptiStretch:** completely closed all round, ensures a well tensioned fabric without any hanging fabric edges on the side. In very large constructions, it reduces the central sagging of the fabric during extension and retraction.

• OptiStretch: held captive on 4 sides, no light gap

#### Plaza Viva Benefits



## Reliable tension system – with new quiet flat rope

The tried and tested clamping system is used with the Plaza Viva with a new flat and at the same time tear-resistant rope.

The rope winds up extremely quietly over itself instead of side by side. This prevents the rope from bouncing.

- Long-lasting equalised fabric tautness with pulley block technology
- The flat rope is quiet and tear-resistant, it prevents the rope from twisting and bouncing and does not fray on the sides



#### Service opening – convenient access

The opening in the cassette offers easy access to the motor input with BiConnect.

- Easier access to components
- The programming of the drive's end positions is made easier by the service opening
- Decoupling of the wind sensors during maintenance



## HighPower LED spotlights – for an amazingly beautiful atmosphere

The LED spotlights integrated into the cassette produce atmospheric lighting on the patio.

- 30,000 hours of LED lighting with minimal energy consumption
- LED infinitely dimmable using weinor's BiConnect control



## Valance Plus – vertical privacy and sun protection

The Valance Plus is elegantly integrated into the Plaza Viva's front profile. It provides privacy and glare protection even with a low-lying sun.

- Can only be operated by gear handle up to 2100 mm
- Patented OptiFlow-System<sup>®</sup> to keep fabric ideally positioned and to close the bottom rail safely
- Valance Plus may only be extended and retracted when using a telescopic post if the telescopic post is cranked right up to the top
- Can be combined optionally with the LED Design light bar

# Plaza Viva Technology

Plaza Viva versions	Plaza Viva Stretch	Plaza Viva OptiStretch	Plaza Viva Stretch LED	Plaza Viva OptiSt- retch LED		
Technology						
Max. width (max. total width for multi-section units: 12 meters, max. 50 m <sup>2</sup> fabric area)	6,000 mm	6,000 mm	6,000 mm	6,000 mm		
Max. projection	5,000 mm	5,000 mm	5,000 mm	5,000 mm		
Max. fabric area	30 m <sup>2</sup>	30 m²	30 m²	30 m²		
Cassette size (w x h)	323 x 166 mm	323 x 166 mm	323 x 166 mm	323 x 166 mm		
Motor drive	• as standard	• as standard	• as standard	<ul> <li>as standard</li> </ul>		
Gear drive	—	—	—	_		
Angle of pitch on awning	4° – 25°	4° – 25°	4° – 25°	4° – 25°		
Installation alternatives	see installation section	on	see installation section	on		
LED lighting (separate spotlights)	_	—	<ul> <li>integrated into the cassette</li> </ul>	• integrated into the cassette		
Standard post length	2,600 mm	2,600 mm	2,600 mm	2,600 mm		
Valance Plus option						
Max. width	6,000 mm	6,000 mm	6,000 mm	6,000 mm		
Max. projection	5,000 mm	5,000 mm	5,000 mm	5,000 mm		
Motor drive	—	—	—	_		
Gear drive	•	•	•	•		
Plaza Viva angle of pitch	max. 20°	max. 20°	max. 20°	max. 20°		
Valance Plus projection (h)	1,000, 1,500, 2,100 mm	1,000, 1,500, 2,100 mm	1,000, 1,500, 2,100 mm	1,000, 1,500, 2,100 mm		
Accessories						
Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	0	0	0	0		
Fixing materials	see installation section	on	see installation section			
Controls						
Radio control	0	0	0	0		
No remote	•	•	•	•		
Weather sensors						
Sun/wind sensor BiConnect BiSens SW-230 V	0	0	0	0		
Sun/wind sensor solar powered BiConnect BiSens SW-Solar+	0	0	0	0		
Sun/wind/rain sensor BiConnect-BiSens-SWR-230V	0	0	0	0		
Quality						
Tested up to	The Plaza Viva has be Beaufort scale (in acc	een tested in the maxin ordance with wind resi	num dimensions up to stance class 3) and wit	wind force 6 on the hstands this load		
Rain class 2 is met	With Plaza Viva with fixed posts from a pitch of 14° With Plaza Viva with telescopic posts from a pitch of 4° (Valance Plus option 5°) with fully lowered post					

Important note: The product should never

be unattended when used as rain protection.

# Plaza Viva LED



## LED lighting – 30,000 hours of lighting with extremely low energy consumption

The select high-power LED components are patented and

- represent the very best in weinor quality:
- Integrated into the cassette
- Atmospheric light thanks to special glass lenses
- Lighting remains on even when awning is retracted
- Highly energy-efficient
- Operating life of 30,000 hours
- Infinitely dimmable when used with BiConnect radio control
- Easy to service: simply replace individual LED lights without uninstalling the awning

#### **Integrated LED lighting**

Awning width in cm	Number of separate LED spotlights	Awning width in cm	Number of separate LED spotlights
- 299	5 – 6	450 – 499	9 – 10
300 - 349	6 – 7	500 - 549	10 – 11
350 – 399	7 – 8	550 – 600	11
400 - 449	8 – 9		

### Joined systems – distance between LED spots in transition area



The distance between the LED spotlights in a multi-section unit's transition area can be 500 mm to 1500 mm.

# Plaza Viva Telescopic post



#### **Telescopic post (optional)**

The optional telescopic post can be really easily lowered on one side using the gear handle providing an awning pitch of 4° (Valance Plus option 5°) and fully cranked down post so that rain drains off reliably. Please note: The system is designed for a maximum rainfall class of 2 (56 l/h/m<sup>2</sup>).

#### Important information

- The telescopic post should ideally always be moved into the highest or lowest position as it can only be locked in place there. If it is moved to a position in between it may lower of its own accord because there is no locking in place.
- The construction may only be extended and retracted if the telescopic post is right up the top
- The mounting of telescopic posts on both sides is not possible as this would cancel out the benefit. It would then only be guaranteed that rain would drain off reliably from a pitch of 14° again.
- 2 telescopic posts are also unsuitable for protection against the low-lying sun as lowering between 150 to 350 mm does not offer sufficient protection. The Valance Plus is ideal for this.

#### Gear handle position



Standard gear handle height 900 mm. Different gear handle position on request.



Controlled draining with lowered post.



If the post is not lowered, the water may collect on the Plaza Viva leading to pooling.



When exceeding rain class 2 (56 l/h/m<sup>2</sup>), the Plaza Viva must be retracted. Risk of damage!

#### Compensation joint and floating bearing





When lowering the top part of the post using the gear handle, it reduces the load on the construction and it remains inherently stable. The wall bracket with floating bearing and compensation joint on the upper part of the post ensure that the entire awning adapts perfectly to the pitch.

#### Paravento (optional)



The Paravento side screen is the perfect complement to the Plaza Viva pergola awning.

- Protects against cool side winds
- Shelters from prying eyes
- Heights of up to 250 cm and projections of up to 400 cm
- Easy to retrofit by attaching it to the Plaza Viva posts, a separate pole or a wall

## Wall sealing profile (optional)



The wall sealing profile conceals the gap between the wall and the cassette. This is a useful option if there is no on-site protection above the cassette, e.g. a roof overhang.

# Plaza Viva Fixed post



#### **Fixed post**

The fixed post's standard length is 2,600 mm. On request the fixed post's bottom sections can be supplied extra-long (e.g. for setting in concrete) The post's recess measurement is min. 150 mm, max. 25% of the projection, max. 1,000 mm The inside post (50 x 50 mm) is always approx. 400 mm long.



joint



Compensation joint for multi-section units



Inside post 50 x 50 mm



Spindle nut with cover cap







# Plaza Viva Valance Plus



#### Valance Plus – more privacy thanks to vertical privacy and sun screen (optional)

The gear handle operated vertical sun protection is integrated elegantly into the Plaza Viva/LED front profile.

- Glare protection and privacy shield up to a maximum valance height of 210 cm
- Only possible with gear drive, only extend and retract the Valance Plus with the telescopic post cranked up
- Valance Plus use up to a Plaza Viva pitch of 4° to 20°.
- Can be combined optionally with the LED Design light bar
- Valance Plus cannot be retrofitted
- With Valance Plus, the fabric support roller is always mounted above the side channel

The Valance Plus should be extended and retracted slowly to guarantee that the fabric winds up neatly.





with retracted Valance Plus



with slightly extended Valance Plus





How Valance Plus height is calculated

#### Available fabrics for the Valance Plus

	Soltis® 86, 92	Soltis® 86, 92	Acrylic			Perluca		Polyester		Star- Screen	Fibreglass screen
Pattern	unicolour	unicolour	stripes	unicolour	unicolour	unicolour	unicolour	stripes	unicolour	unicolour	
Roll width	177 cm	267 cm	120 cm	120 cm	240 cm	120 cm	240 cm	120 cm	120 cm	325 cm	max. 320 cm*
Valance length											
100 cm	Ν	Ν	L	N	N	N/L	N	L	N	N	N
150 cm	Ν	Ν	Q	Q	Ν	Q	Ν	Q	Q	Ν	Ν
210 cm	Q	N	Q	Q	N	Q	N	Q	Q	N	_

N Seamless: seamless fabric; structure of fabric runs crosswise to structure of awning fabric

- Q Transverse seam: fabric with transverse seam; either in top or bottom third as desired; structure of fabric runs diagonally to structure of awning fabric
- L Longitudinal seam: structure of fabric runs longitudinally to structure of awning fabric
- Not available
- \* Max. roll widths are stipulated in the collection brochure

Please note: On the gear-driven Valance Plus, it is possible that the Valance Plus bottom rail will close unevenly.
# Plaza Viva Controls



## Installation location for receiver, power supply pack and further electrical components

The receiver is accommodated in the cassette. The faceplate (not shown here) can be really easily opened for servicing purposes. The receiver is then easily accessible.



• The cover can be opened for servicing purposes, e.g. to disconnect the drive from the control components (only BiConnect).

Cables can be inserted into the channel on the back of the cassette using the V2 cable fixing elements.

#### weinor BiConnect radio technology

Product	Electronics	BiConnect control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
Plaza Viva	Plaza Viva drive	BiRec receiver integrated into cassette	BiRec MA-K	<ul> <li>BiEasy 1M/5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>BiEasy App</li> <li>1MW-3V wall transmitter</li> </ul>
Plaza Viva LED	Plaza Viva drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>BiRec combi-receiver for main drive and LED spotlights (with integrated power supply pack) integrated into cassette</li> <li>Dimmable LED</li> </ul>	BiRec MLED	<ul> <li>BiEasy 5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>BiEasy App</li> </ul>
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	<ul> <li>Dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Installation of the reciever in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	BiRec HD	<ul> <li>BiEasy 5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>BiEasy App</li> </ul>

Note: Plaza Viva Valance Plus is only available with gear drive

We do not recommend any sensors when using telescopic posts and/or the Valance Plus. Nevertheless, if sensors are used, the Valance Plus or telescopic posts may only be used if the sensors are switched to manual operation.

#### Plaza Viva Controls

## Somfy io-homecontrol<sup>®</sup> radio technology

Product	Electronics	Somfy io-homecontrol control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
Plaza Viva	Plaza Viva drive	Somfy io remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette	Somfy io remote-controlled motor	<ul> <li>Situo 1 io Pure II/Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 io Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>
Plaza Viva LED	Plaza Viva drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy io remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for the LED spot- lights (with downstream power supply pack) integrated into cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	Somfy io remote-controlled motor and Lighting Receiver Variation on/off io	Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	<ul> <li>Not dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Installation of the reciever in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	Heating Slim Receiver on/off io 2KW STAS3/STAK3	<ul> <li>Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 io Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>

## Somfy RTS radio technology

Product	Electronics	Somfy RTS control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
Plaza Viva	Plaza Viva drive	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor	<ul> <li>Situo 1 RTS Pure II/Situo 1 Soliris RTS Pure II/Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 RTS Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>
Plaza Viva LED	Plaza Viva drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for the LED spot- lights (with downstream power supply pack) integrated into cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor and Lighting Slim Receiver RTS	• Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	<ul> <li>Not dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Installation of the reciever in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	Heating Slim Receiver RTS Plug	Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter



Note:

Please see the "Accessories" technical brochure for further details regarding the drive and control.

#### Plaza Viva Controls

#### Hard wired with Somfy control

Product	Electronics	Hard wired Somfy control	Control
Plaza Viva	Plaza Viva drive	Somfy control for awning drive	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno
Plaza Viva LED	Plaza Viva drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy control for awning drive</li> <li>Switch on site for the LED spotlights</li> <li>LED power supply pack integrated into the cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno and suitable light switch (on site)
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	Not dimmable	Suitable switch (on site)

#### Hard wired (existing switch/power supply on site)

Product	Electronics	Hard wired control	Control
Plaza Viva	Plaza Viva drive	Awning switch for the awning drive	e.g. double rocker switch switch (on site)
Plaza Viva LED	Plaza Viva drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Awning switch for the awning drive</li> <li>Switch on site for the LED spotlightss</li> <li>LED power supply pack integrated into the cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	e.g. double rocker switch and suitable light switch (on site)
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	Not dimmable	Suitable switch (on site)

#### Power supply pack for option LED (hard wired)



Power supply pack for LED option



The power supply pack provides the voltage and current intensity required to operate the LED.

It is only necessary for the LED option.

Product	Position of the power supply pack
Plaza Viva LED Plaza Viva LED OptiStretch	• In the cassette
Plaza Viva Plaza Viva OptiStretch	No power supply pack necessary

#### Installation location for power supply pack for option LED

The power supply pack is located in the cassette and is easily accessible. The installation location is not required for drives without LED options and remains empty.

# Plaza Viva Stretch/OptiStretch

# The Stretch and OptiStretch system in comparison

The Plaza Viva Stretch and OptiStretch consist of identical frame constructions and use the same tried and tested weinor clamping system with a new flat rope that winds up extremely quietly. The fabric guide is the difference between the two systems.

In the Stretch System, the fabric is tensioned between the fabric roller bearing and the front profile in the ascending direction, while in the OptiStretch, the fabric is additionally guided sideways in the guide rail. The OptiStretch thus achieves a significantly higher degree of fabric tensioning.

The fabric slack depends on the width and drop of the Plaza Viva and can be up to 15 cm.



#### The Stretch system

#### The OptiStretch system

#### Fabric tensioning technology Rope clamping system



Tension system with 2 tensioned springs (number of springs depends on the projection and width)

#### Tension system with 1 tensioned spring (depends on projection and length of spring)



#### Use of fabric support roller at bottom



A fabric support roller is used at the bottom as standard with a projection > 4000 mm.

With locations exposed to winds we recommend using additional fabric roller supports (option).

The fabric support rollers can be retrofitted at any time without too much effort.

#### Plaza Viva head clearance height



#### Use of fabric support roller at top (with Valance Plus option)



With the Valance Plus option the fabric support roller (from a projection >°4000 mm) is fitted at the top as standard.

## Plaza Viva with Valance Plus head clearance height



The Plaza Viva with Valance Plus head clearance height depends on the angle of pitch and is a maximum of approx. 95 cm less than the calculated Plaza Viva head clearance height.

#### **Multi-section units**



The maximum size of a Plaza Viva is 6,000 x 5,000 mm. Wider systems can be extended easily to become a multi-section unit by placing singleunit systems next to each other, the total width for multi-section units is 12 meters, max. 50 m<sup>2</sup> fabric area (see table below).

The single-unit systems installed next to each other have a separate motor drive and can thus be retracted and extended separately. The telescopic post can only be used on the right and left but not in the centre.

#### Fabric area Plaza Viva multi-section units

Projection	Width in cm										
in cm	650	700	750	800	850	900	1,000	1,050	1,100	1,150	1,200
200											
250											
300											
350											
400										46 m²	48 m²
450								47.25 m²	49.5 m²		
500							50 m²				

producible



Multi-section unit with telescopic post on right and left

Sealing multi-section units

#### Multi-section units with wall offset



On request, various offset versions can be produced (e.g. wall offset).

Multi-section unit with offset (profile view)



Multi-section unit with offset (top view)





The gap (10-50 mm) between the wall offset and unit can optionally be covered with a bracket.

The gap between the wall and cassette can also optionally be covered with a wall sealing profile.

Multi-section unit with offset (profile view)

#### **General view**



#### Position of wall brackets



#### Plaza Viva cross-section

#### Plaza Viva cross sections and dimensions



#### **Cross-sections**

#### Plaza Viva Valance Plus cross sections and dimensions



#### Plaza Viva LED and Valance Plus cross sections and dimensions



Plaza Viva with wall connection roof cross sections and dimensions



#### **Determining dimensions**

The patio depth (T) and projection (B) as well as installation height and delta using the example of the angle of pitch 4°, 5°, 10°, 14°, 20° and 25° can be determined using the following tables.

#### Fixed post: determining the patio depth (T) and projection (B)

#### Determining the patio depth (T) (up to inside edge of post)

Angle of	Projection B (in mm)								
pitch (α)	2500	3000	3500	4000	4500	5000			
4°	2355	2854	3353	3851	4350	4849			
5°	2352	2850	3348	3846	4344	4842			
10°	2326	2819	3311	3804	4296	4788			
14°	2294	2779	3265	3750	4235	4720			
20°	2224	2693	3163	3633	4103	4573			
25°	2146	2599	2923	3506	3959	4412			

Patio depth (T) in mm (rounded figures)

#### Determining the projection (B)

Angle of	Patio depth (T) in mm								
pitch (α)	2500	3000	3500	4000	4500	5000			
4°	2645	3147	3648	4149	4650				
5°	2649	3151	3653	4155	4657				
10°	2676	3184	3692	4200	4707				
14°	2712	3227	3743	4258	4773				
20°	2794	3326	3859	4391	4923				
25°	2890	3442	3994	4546					

Projection (B) in mm (rounded figures)

#### Telescopic post: determining the patio depth (T) and projection (B)

#### Determining the patio depth (T) (up to inside edge of post)

Angle of	Projection B (in mm)								
pitch (α)	2500	3000	3500	4000	4500	5000			
4°	2225	2724	3223	3721	4220	4719			
5°	2222	2720	3218	3716	4214	4712			
10°	2196	2689	3181	3674	4166	4658			
14°	2164	2649	3135	3620	4105	4590			
20°	2094	2563	3033	3503	3973	4443			
25°	2016	2469	2923	3376	3829	4282			

Patio depth (T) in mm (rounded figures)

#### Determining the projection (B)

Angle of	Patio depth (T) in mm							
pitch (α)	2500	3000	3500	4000	4500	5000		
4°	2776	3277	3778	4279	4781			
5°	2779	3281	3783	4285	4787			
10°	2808	3316	3824	4332	4839			
14°	2846	3361	3877	4392	4907			
20°	2933	3465	3997	4529				
25°	3034	3586	4137	4689				

Projection (B) in mm (rounded figures)









#### **Determining dimensions**

#### Determining the installation height (Ukw) and delta ( $\Delta$ )

#### Determining the patio depth (T) (up to inside edge of post)

Angle of	Projection B (in mm)								
pitch (α)	2500	3000	3500	4000	4500	5000			
4°	2202	2237	2272	2307	2342	2377			
5°	2244	2288	2332	2375	2419	2462			
10°	2452	2539	2625	2712	2799	2886			
14°	2615	2736	2857	2978	3099	3220			
20°	2854	3025	3196	3367	3539	3710			
25°	3047	3258	3470	3681	3892	4104			

Wall bracket bottom edge installation height (Ukw) in mm (rounded figures)

## Determining the delta: difference between the wall bracket bottom edge (Ukw) and head clearance height (DH)

Angle of pitch (α)	Projection B (in mm)					
	2500	3000	3500	4000	4500	5000
4°	102	137	172	207	242	277
5°	144	188	232	275	319	362
10°	352	439	526	613	700	787
14°	515	636	757	878	999	1120
20°	754	925	1096	1267	1438	1609
25°	947	1158	1370	1581	1792	2004

Delta ( $\Delta$ ) in mm (rounded figures)

#### **Recess measurement**

The posts can be recessed by up to approx. 25% of the projection and a maximum of 1000 mm. Installation tolerances are specified made-to-order on the installation sheet.

#### Important:

- Plaza Viva with fixed post: there is no risk of pooling from a pitch of 14°
- $\bullet$  Plaza Viva with telescopic post: there is no risk of pooling from a pitch of  $4^\circ$  and with fully lowered post
- $\bullet$  The Plaza Viva with fixed posts complies with rain class 2 from a pitch of 14  $^\circ$
- With telescopic posts it already complies with rain class 2 from a pitch of 4° with fully lowered telescopic post



#### The Plaza Viva planning aid

Using the clever planning aid you can easily calculate the installation height, pitch and delta value for the height difference between the wall bracket bottom edge and front profile head clearance height by specifying the projection or patio depth you want.







#### Legend:

- B = projection
- $\alpha$  = angle of pitch (roof pitch)
- Ukw = wall bracket bottom edge
- $\Delta = \text{height difference (Ukw DH)}$
- T = patio depth
- Ueg = straight overhang
- DH = head clearance height

#### Wall mounting



Wall bracket





Wall bracket (fixed view)



Wall bracket (floating view)



Wall bracket base plate







02

## **Ceiling mounting**



235 x 160 x 18 x 180 mm angle bracket, complete (roof mounting)





Front and rear installation option for ceiling bracket







#### **Rafter mounting**



#### Installation on insulated facades using Fischer Thermax 12/16



The Thermax 12/16 stand-off installation system from Fischer is suitable for insulated facades as it allows for secure fixing.

#### Installation with stand off bracket (special bracket)





80 to 300 mm gaps can be bridged using the stand off bracket.

Plaza Viva with stand off bracket, e.g. to overcome a soil pipe







Stand off bracket with wall bracket

Stand off bracket

#### Installation on roof using a stilt (special bracket)



This special bracket is used for example under roof tiles. The longer plate is mounted under the roof tiles and sealed again on site. This mounting holes are drilled on site after determining the position.

Please note: We need the house roof angle and length of the round pole (stilt) to install the stilt.

Use of stilt



Three-piece special bracket (mounting plate, stilt, wall bracket)



Use for installation on a roof

X = rafter thickness

Y = stilt adjustment range = (900 - rafter distance - 2x)/2

Z = height of roof structure (tiles etc. ...)

#### Installation of Plaza Viva laterally on a wall or in a niche

100 x 50 x

bracket

5 x 120 mm angle

40

50





The Plaza Viva can also be

next to a Terrazza using the 100 x 50 x 5 x 120 mm wall-mount

angle bracket.

mounted on a lateral wall, niche or

100 x 50 x 5 x 120 mm wall-mount angle bracket

#### Other application examples

## Plaza Viva installation beyond a patio roof and/or conservatory

The Plaza Viva is installed on the wall on site using wall brackets and the projection is extended (the head clearance height must be noted for this). With installation without telescopic posts, the Plaza Viva can also be fixed onto the conservatory using support brackets.



#### Installation on a wall (without posts)

8.5

If there is a wall on the opposite side, it is possible to mount the Plaza Viva onto the wall without posts using adjustable support brackets.

#### **Duofix supporting structure**

Two Plaza Viva can be mounted on our Duofix supporting structure to achieve an even larger area of sun shade.





#### Post installation

#### Post plates



Standard post plate (installation on even ground)



Post plate 200 x 100 x 10 mm







Adjustable post plate for installation on uneven ground and Krinner screw foundation systems KSF F



Post plate cover cap 210 x 110 x 26 mm

Post plate 200 x 160 x 10 mm









198

#### **Post installation**



Plaza Viva depth I Axial dimension of posts Plaza Viva width (distance of wall 9.5 mm on each side) Wide patio

Plaza Viva mounting on a terrace with lateral wall

#### Post foundation planning







Mounting post plate 200 x 140 x 10 mm on a wall

#### Note

The size of the foundation depends on the quality of the ground, the acting loads and the climate conditions (frost depth). The size specified here assumes unfavourable conditions. A smaller foundation may also be adequate depending on the structural conditions.

02

Mounting post plate 200 x 140 x 10 mm with lateral wall offset

## Installation with angle bracket









Angle bracket with posts



#### Post installation weighted base for posts







#### Note:

- The weighted base for posts has a size of approx. 500 x 500 mm, the height is approx. 560 mm.
- As a weighting it is recommended to use 48 stones in size 200 x 100 x 60 mm. This corresponds to a weight of about 125 kg.
- The weighted base for posts is not suitable for use on wind-exposed places.

#### Post installation

#### Post fixation on concrete floor slabs 1

The standard configuration is the installation of the Plaza Viva with post plates on a given concrete floor. The finished cut length of the post is always indicated on the assembly sheet.

#### Bucket foundation **Q**

Posts are securely fitted into a strong non moving base. The concrete is pured and set at the end of the installation, which simplifies the alignment of the posts.

#### Deep-seated foundation ③ Screw foundation ④

The easy and flexible screw attachment on a 700 (w) x 800 (h) x 700 (d) mm screw foundation is carried out like the standard fixation (item 1). The reference height for the crank position as well as for the post height is always TEFF.

When fixing the posts into soil/earth they are an alternative to conventional foundation fixing. The post length as mentioned on the mounting sheet is increased by the floor level (X).



#### Mounting with angle bracket 5

Is suitable, for example, when mounting in front of a balcony or a terrace. The calculated post length is increased by the floor level (X).

#### Mounting on wall **6**

When the post is mounted on a wall, the height of the post is reduced by the height of the wall (Y).

#### Weighted base for posts 🕖

If it is not possible to fix the post into the ground then the base option can be used. For example a public/pedestrian area, indoor installation, or on a balcony.

TEFF: Top edge of finished floor X: Floor recess Y: Height wall



Pergola awning and vertical awning

# Plaza Viva with VertiTex II

The combination of the **Plaza Viva** pergola and **VertiTex II** vertical awning gives users clear added value. As it provides additional glare, privacy, wind and sun protection – from the front and sides. Plaza Viva and VertiTex II also visually complement each other perfectly. The vertical awning's small cassette sizes (92 and optionally 112 mm) perfectly match the pergola awning's slimline look. Two tried and tested weinor products are therefore combined to form a reliable complete system with a seamless appearance.

# Plaza Viva with VertiTex II Benefits



## Combination of two tried and tested weinor products

Plaza Viva is the Slimline design weather all-rounder which allows you enjoy your precious outdoor space for longer. VertiTex II shines as a universal vertical awning for elegant sun protection and privacy. The combination of these two tried and tested innovations creates **a complete system with a seamless appearance.** 



#### Installation made easy: simple assembley

As with all other weinor products, VertiTex II is attached to the Plaza Viva using a locking bar. This type of installation is **well-known**, **safe and easy to carry out**. The new 300 mm bracket was designed for perfect installation. It connects the locking bar to the VertiTex ideally and offers additional stability.



#### Large widths possible, multi-section units too

The use of VertiTex II does not restrict the system width. The **maximum width of 6 metres** is also achieved with vertical awnings. Multi-section units are also possible in this combination, on request.



#### Slimline, unobtrusive, seamless design

Plaza Viva and VertiTex II also visually complement each other perfectly. The vertical awning's **small cassette sizes** (92 and optionally 112 mm) perfectly match the pergola awning's slimline look. VertiTex II is available with the round or square cassette designs.



VertiTex II Zip | VertiTex II rail

#### Two versions each:

VertiTex II: Zip and rail Rail: can be used anywhere, with light gap Zip: taut fabric, no light gap Plaza Viva: Stretch and OptiStretch (not shown) Stretch: clamped on 2 sides, cost effective solution OptiStretch: held captive on 4 sides, no light gap Plaza Viva and VertiTex II are wind resistant up to wind force 5.

# Plaza Viva with VertiTex II Technology

#### Plaza Viva with VertiTex II: numerous versions

When using VertiTex II on Plaza Viva, a wide range of mounting options are available. The table shows the different combination versions.

View		View from above	Description
	Plaza Viva with VertiTex II all round	I.	1 Plaza Viva 3 VertiTex II 3 locking bars (left, front, right) 2 wall profiles including accessories
	Plaza Viva with VertiTex II left and right <sup>1)</sup>	I. J	1 Plaza Viva 2 VertiTex II 3 locking bars (left, front, right) 2 wall profiles including accessories
	Plaza Viva with VertiTex II front and left <sup>1)</sup>		1 Plaza Viva 2 VertiTex II 2 locking bars (left, front) 1 wall profile including accessories
	Plaza Viva with VertiTex II left $^{\mbox{\tiny 1)}}$	IV.	1 Plaza Viva 1 VertiTex II 2 locking bars (left, front) 1 wall profile including accessories
	Plaza Viva with VertiTex II front and right <sup>1)</sup>	V.	1 Plaza Viva 2 VertiTex II 2 locking bars (front, right) 1 wall profile including accessories
	Plaza Viva with VertiTex II right <sup>1)</sup>	VI.	1 Plaza Viva 1 VertiTex II 2 locking bars (front, right) 1 wall profile including accessories
	Plaza Viva with VertiTex II front, locking bar /wall post right <sup>1) 2)</sup>	VII.	1 Plaza Viva 1 VertiTex II 2 locking bars (front, right) 1 wall profile including accessories
	Plaza Viva with VertiTex II front, locking bar /wall post left <sup>1) 2)</sup>	VIII.	1 Plaza Viva 1 VertiTex II 2 locking bars (left, front) 1 wall profile including accessories

<sup>1)</sup> Viewed from the front <sup>2)</sup> The motor side with VertiTex II front and the side of the locking bar depend on the Plaza Viva motor side.

#### Note:

- One locking bar and one wall profile are required per laterally mounted VertiTex II. For versions with just a lateral VertiTex II (II, IV and VI), a front locking bar is required for safety reasons.
- With just a front VertiTex II, one lateral locking bar and one wall post are required on the same motor side of the Plaza Viva and VertiTex II for cable arrangement.

#### Views, cross-sections and dimensions



Total width = cassette width + 2 x 9.5 mm + 2 x VertiTex II cassette depth



Total depth = depth (D) + 35 mm + straight overhang

**Plaza Viva side view** Example VertiTex II 112 round



#### Plaza Viva with front VertiTex II

If a VertiTex II is only mounted on the front, an additional side locking bar is required for cable arrangement.





The maximum pitch for a Plaza Viva with front VertiTex II **is 23° as highlighted in the above drawing.** 

weinor 2021 | 02 Pergola awnings | Plaza Viva and VertiTex II



#### Please note:

The combination of Plaza Viva and VertiTex II is only possible with fixed posts – no telescopic post is available. This is because the post must have a continuous dimension of 70 x 70 mm.

Standard: Plaza Viva posts have a 50 x 50 mm top section which is used for the telescopic post option.

207

02

#### Installing wall brackets

#### NEW! 300 mm wall bracket, cassette type 92/112

The new 300 mm wall bracket was specially designed for Plaza Viva with VertiTex II. It connects the Plaza Viva and VertiTex II and gives the entire system perfect stability.



cassette type 92/112



#### 80 mm wall bracket, cassette type 92/112

The 80 mm wall bracket 80 mm is required when the distance of 2,500 mm between two brackets is exceeded to prevent the cassette from sagging.



The fabric positioning can be adjusted using the grub screw in the middle. The outer grub screws are used to secure the cassette.



Cassette type 92/112 wall bracket



#### Plaza Viva with VertiTex II Zip/cassette types



The VertiTex Zip with round cassette is used as standard for Plaza Viva.







Example with VertiTex II 112 round

#### VertiTex II 92 and 112 square

The VertiTex Zip with square cassette can be ordered with the Plaza Viva on request.







Example with VertiTex II 112 square

#### Plaza Viva with VertiTex II Zip/posts

#### VertiTex II Zip with round guide rails





Wall profile

5. 60 55. 42 42 5 Plaza Viva depth 115 x 50 locking bar 115 x 50 locking bar VertiTex II width 42 42 070 070 52. 55 115 x 50 locking bar 5 m ₽ 4 55 2 55 VertiTex II width 13 13 Plaza Viva post outer edge

Front post

#### VertiTex II Zip with square guide rails





#### Cabling



The front VertiTex II motor side is always on the same side as the Plaza Viva motor.

With the VertiTex II side versions, the motor is always located on the wall side.

When ordering the VertiTex II front only, it is essential to use a side locking bar for cable arrangement and connection.

## Cable arrangement front post with front mounted VertiTex II





Cable arrangement with

Hirschmann plug is pre-assembled at the factory

Cable arrangement with wall profile on right





Hirschmann plug supplied on site

(M) Motor side





#### Plaza Viva with mounted locking bar for VertiTex II assembly



Post (standard)

Post (set-back)



#### Plaza Viva with mounted VertiTex II all round



Post (standard)



Post (set-back)

The posts can be set-back up to 25% of the projection (min. 200 mm/max. 1,000 mm). Mounting dimensions are specified on the assembly sheet for each order.



#### **Technical information**

- The rear edge from the wall profile to the inner edge of the post is crucial for the depth calculation. The post is supplied with a 200 mm recess measurement, as standard. The post can optionally be set-back up to 25% of the projection and 1,000 mm at the most. This reduces the length of the locking bar on the right and left.
- For versions with just a lateral VertiTex II, a front locking bar is required for safety reasons. In the case of just a VertiTex II at the front, a lateral locking bar and wall profile are required for cable arrangement.
- The width of the side locking bar and VertiTex II depend on the front posts' recess measurement. At the same time, the VertiTex II height changes. This can influence the price of the VertiTex II and the locking bar.

#### Important notes:

- Plaza Viva can only be realised with VertiTex II with fixed posts. From a pitch of 14° it fulfils rain class 2.
- The front posts for Plaza Viva with VertiTex II have a continuous dimension of 70 x 70 mm.
- Plaza Viva with VertiTex II is only possible in combination with cassette 92 and 112.
- VertiTex II is designed with a round cassette and round guide rail, as standard. VertiTex II square is possible, on request.



Pergola awning

# weinor PergoTex II weinor PergoTex II LED | Basic | LED Basic

An open air feeling meets wind and weather protection – with the flexible **weinor PergoTex II** pergola awning. When it is open, it offers an open air feeling like a convertible and an unobstructed view to the starlit sky in the evening or at night. When it is closed, it protects against rain and provides sun and UV protection. Thus, you can use your patio in two ways. The elegant, high-quality self-supporting construction has been designed based on the proven weinor technology and it can easily withstand even high wind loads. The PVC awning material has a very high tensile strength, can be extended and retracted by means of a drive and, on request, is also available as a translucent, light-transmitting version – for a magic atmosphere on your patio.

weinor PergoTex II / LED: Integrated lighting



Fabric protection roof: Noise reduced

> Wall gap sealing profile: Easily accessible adjustment area



Variable water outlet: Individual height adjustment



**Sturdy pull system:** Smooth extending and retracting



214

# weinor PergoTex II Highlights



**Dripping water drainage:** Controlled water drainage



02

Rain gutter and posts: Controlled rain drainage



**Straightforward, functional design:** Posts with integrated, easily accessible water drainage

Convertible folding system in 2 versions:

- weinor PergoTex II
- weinor PergoTex II Basic



**Modular system:** Convenience and weather protection



weinor 2021 | 02 Pergola awnings | weinor PergoTex II

# weinor PergoTex II Benefits



## Convertible folding system – rain-proof, wind-resistant and retractable

- Waterproof: light-proof or light-transmitting PVC fabric with high tensile strength
- Pitch from 0° to 25° possible
- Ideal water drainage already from a pitch of 8° (no risk of pooling)
- Elegant design without screws in directly visible areas
- Robust: suitable for wind loads up to force 6 on the Beaufort scale (approx. 45 km/h)
- Easy installation: only a few tools required, with pre-assembled adhesive seals
- Easy installation of the continuous wall profile (similar to Terrazza)



## Rain gutter and posts – controlled rain drainage

- Controlled water drainage from the aluminium fabric safety shield over the side channel in the large gutter in the front area, and thus reduced soiling of the fabric
- Two-part posts:
  - Leads for add-on products can be installed in the postsWater drain pipe can be easily accessed for servicing
- Lateral small gutter along the side channel with separate groove for cable routing



## Sturdy and robust drive system – smooth operation with excellent tension

The proven drive system with heavy-duty and durable lasting components ensures really smooth, continuous extending and retracting.

- Highly resistant toothed belt with ball bearings
- Extremely quiet rollers
- Almost all visible covers are made of aluminium cast in the system's colour



#### Variable water outlet

The square posts ensure easy dimensioning and fastening of the glazing elements.

The two-part post design makes it possible to individually adapt the height of the water outlet during the mounting on site.
### weinor PergoTex II Benefits



 Open wall gap sealing profile adjustment area (with LED option)
 Wall gap sealing profile adjustment area (without LED option)

## Continuous wall connection profile – easily accessed and easy adjustments

The wall gap sealing profile screwed to the wall is used to attach the side channel, the rain shield and the electronics. The electronic components are installed in the wall gap sealing profile and behind cover strips so that they are concealed, but can still be easily accessed for servicing. This makes it possible to have the maintenance work carried out easily and quickly and facilitates servicing work on control components. In the case of the order option "without LED", the wall bracket is equipped with the mounting plate, but is delivered without the transformer/receiver bar. The order option "LED" additionally includes the transformer/receiver bar (window strip) to attach the LED components.



## New high-quality aluminium safety shield with separate guttering

- Very robust aluminium fabric safety shield designed as a chamber profile (noise-reducing during rain)
- The fabric safety shield can be optionally reinforced for higher snow loads
- Rainwater runs off via the front gutter to the right and left into the lateral gutters along the side channels in a controlled manner
- Easy to clean (smooth surface)
- Reduced soiling of the fabric due to the guttering on the aluminium safety shield



# HighPower LED spotlights – for an amazingly beautiful atmosphere

On request, dimmable HighPower LED-single spotlights can be integrated into the transoms.

- Invisible cable routing in the fabric seams
- LED spotlights dimmable with BiConnect radio control
- 30,000 LED light hours with lowest energy consumption (85% electricity saving compared to halogen technology)
- Fixed spacing:
  - 500 mm between the LED spotlights on the transoms
  - A maximum of 12 LED spotlights per transom
  - A maximum of 4 staves with LED

## weinor PergoTex II Benefits



## Modular system – even more convenience and better weather protection

Very easy to add and retrofit elements to the weinor PergoTex II system:

- All-glass glazing elements
- Vertical awnings
- The dimensions and shape of the guttering and the posts have been designed in such a way that glazing elements (GE) can be mounted without additional profiles
- The whole unit is completed by smart wiring concepts tailored to the products



# Preparation for mains connection (3 order options)

For all options, the cabling for the power supply is integrated into the components so that it is weather-proof, concealed and visually appealing.

- Preparations for mains connection
  - For the installation of the VertiTex II vertical sun protection on the guttering (front right/left)
  - For the installation of the lateral VertiTex II
  - In the guttering for optional electrical connections



## The weinor Pergona<sup>®</sup> collection

The robust and waterproof PVC fabrics are available in 2 versions – either as Pergona<sup>®</sup> classic or, subject to a surcharge, as Pergona<sup>®</sup> translucent.

The special feature of the Pergona<sup>®</sup> translucent is its high light transmission of up to 21%. The fabric allows natural light through and provides optimal protection against rain and UV rays.

With its light transmission of up to 11%, the Pergona<sup>®</sup> classic is ideally suitable for shading purposes. Dirty marks cannot be seen from underneath either.

weinor Pergona® classic	weinor Pergona® translucent
<ul> <li>Rain-proof, highly tear-resistant, opaque</li> <li>Extremely stable</li> <li>Easy-care</li> <li>Light transmission 0 – 11%</li> <li>5 patterns</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Rain-proof, highly tear-resistant, translucent</li> <li>Extremely stable</li> <li>Easy-care</li> <li>Light transmission up to 21%</li> <li>5 patterns</li> </ul>

For comprehensive documentation and choice of patterns, see separate collection.

# weinor PergoTex II Technology

weinor PergoTex II versions	weinor PergoTex II	weinor PergoTex II Basic			
Technology					
Max. width of 1 unit (1-unit system)	7,000 mm	7,000 mm			
Max. width of 2 units (multi-section unit)	14,000 mm	14,000 mm			
Max. projection	6,500 mm	6,500 mm			
Fabric folding height (bottom edge of folding up to top edge of stave)	max. 300 mm	max. 300 mm			
Post dimensions	115 x 115 mm	without posts, without rain gutter			
Roof pitch as sun protection	0° to 25°	0° to 25°			
Roof pitch also as rain protection	from 8°	from 8°			
Motor drive	• as standard	• as standard			
Installation alternatives	wall mounting	installation on walls			
Safety shield depth (standard)	782 – 1,237 mm	0			
Accessories					
Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	0	0			
LED light bar (see next page)	0	0			
Vertical glass elements	0	0			
Vertical sun protection	0	0			
Radio control	0	0			
No remote	•	•			
Weather sensors					
Sun/wind sensor BiConnect BiSens SW-230 V	0	0			
Sun/wind sensor solar powered BiConnect BiSens SW-Solar+	0	0			
Sun/wind/rain sensor BiConnect-BiSens-SWR-230V	0	0			
Quality					
Tested up to	The weinor PergoTex II has been tested in the maximum dimensions up to wind strength 6 on the Beaufort scale (= wind resistance class 3) and withstands this load.				
Rain class 2 is met	from a pitch of 8°				

For the weinor PergoTex II type pergola awning, the risk assessment was carried out in accordance with DIN EN 12100:2009. Please note that it may be necessary to have a special risk assessment carried out with respect to special conditions for use and locations, for example kindergartens or facilities for the disabled.

For detailed descriptions of accessories and colours, see appendix in product folder

● standard ○ optional — unavailable

# weinor PergoTex II LED

## Integrated HighPower LED spotlights



Select LED components for top weinor quality:

- Integrated into the transoms
- Atmospheric light thanks to special glass lenses
- Highly energy-efficient
- Operating life of 30,000 hours of lighting with 85% lower energy consumption
- Infinitely dimmable when used with BiConnect radio control
- Easy to service: simple replacement of individual LED lights
- A defined number of LED spotlights per transom
- Spacing of the spotlights 500 mm
- A maximum of 12 LED spotlights per transom
- A maximum of 4 staves with LED spotlights

Width	Projection in	Projection in cm													
in cm	0-110	111–175	176-240	241-305	306-369	370-434	435–498	499–563	564-627	628-650					
	Number of LED spotlights														
200	0	2	2	2	4	4	6	6	8	8					
250	0	4	4	4	8	8	12	12	16	16					
300	0	4	4	4	8	8	12	12	16	16					
350	0	6	6	6	12	12	18	18	24	24					
400	0	6	6	6	12	12	18	18	24	24					
450	0	8	8	8	16	16	24	24	32	32					
500	0	8	8	8	16	16	24	24	32	32					
550	0	10	10	10	20	20	30	30	40	40					
600	0	10	10	10	20	20	30	30	40	40					
650	0	12	12	12	24	24	36	36	48	48					
700	0	12	12	12	24	24	36	36	48	48					
	Number of 4	5 x 60 mm tra	ansoms												
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9					
	Of them, nu	mber of 45 x 6	50 mm transo	ms with LED											
	0	1	1	1	2	2	3	3	4	4					

#### Options

• Changing the position of LED transoms (no extra charge).

• Supplementing/ordering additional transoms (45 x 60 mm) with/without integrated LED spotlights (extra charge).

#### Prerequisites

- A transom (45 x 60 mm) without LED spotlights must be installed between the transoms with integrated LED spotlights.
- A maximum of 4 transoms with LED spotlights per system possible.
- 0 or 1 or 2 transoms (45 x 60 mm) without integrated LED spotlights must be installed between the first transom with integrated LED spotlights and the transom (80 x 60 mm) on the wall.
- Lighting in the transom (80 x 60 mm) on the wall and in the transom (80 x 60 mm) on the projection profile is not possible.
- Any number of transoms without LED possible between the last transom with LED and the transom (80 x 60 mm) on the guttering.

### Joined systems – distance between LED spots in transition area



The distance between the LED spotlights in a multi-section unit's transition area can be 500 mm to 1500 mm.

## Possible choice and combination of transoms 45 x 60 mm transoms with LED



### weinor PergoTex II with separate LED light bar



Lowered LED light bar Benefit: lighting even if the system is retracted



**LED light bar on the guttering** Note: The LED light bar on the guttering is ideally installed in combination with the weinor w50-c fixed element

Width in mm	Number of LED spotlights	Width in mm	Number of LED spotlights
1,500 - 1,649	2	3,850 - 4,399	7
1,650 – 2,199	3	4,400 - 4,949	8
2,200 - 2,749	4	4,950 - 5,499	9
2,750 – 3,299	5	5,500 - 6,039	10
3,300 - 3,849	6	6.040 - 6.500	11

On request, the weinor PergoTex II can also be supplemented with a separate light bar. This light bar is mounted to the wall or to the guttering. The spacing of the spotlights of the separate light bar is 550 mm and thus deviates from the spacing of the integrated LED spotlights.

From a width of more than 6,501 mm, two separate LED light bars are required.

# weinor PergoTex II Control

## weinor BiConnect radio technology



Wall gap sealing profile (with LED option)

## Installation location for remote receiver, power supply pack and other electrical components

The BiConnect remote receiver **①** is installed in the wall connection profile **②** and covered by the weinor PergoTex II fabric. However, the remote receiver can still be accessed easily, since the wall connection fabric can be easily removed from the wall bracket for servicing.



Wall connection profile with BiRec MA-K (without LED option)

Product	Electronics	BiConnect control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
weinor PergoTex II	weinor PergoTex II drive	• BiRec receiver integrated into wall bracket	BiRec MA-K	<ul> <li>BiEasy 1M/5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>BiEasy App</li> <li>1MW-3V wall transmitter</li> </ul>
weinor PergoTex II LED	weinor PergoTex II drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>BiRec receiver for main drive and power supply pack for the LED spotlights integrated into the wall bracket</li> <li>Additional BiRec receiver integrated into the transoms for the LED spotlights</li> <li>Dimmable LED</li> </ul>	BiRec MLED	<ul> <li>BiEasy 5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>BiEasy App</li> </ul>
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/ Tempura Quadra heating	<ul> <li>Dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Accommodation of receiver in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	BiRec HD	<ul> <li>BiEasy 5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>BiEasy App</li> </ul>

Note:

Please see the "Accessories" technical brochure for further details regarding the drive and control.

## Somfy io-homecontrol® radio technology

Product	Electronics	Somfy io-homecontrol control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
weinor PergoTex II	weinor PergoTex II drive	Somfy io receiver integrated into wall bracket	Somfy io radio control Awning Slim Receiver io Plug	<ul> <li>Situo 1 io Pure II/Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 io Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>
weinor PergoTex II LED	weinor PergoTex II drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy io receiver integrated into wall bracket</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for the LED spotlights (with downstream power supply pack) integrated into wall bracket</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	Somfy io radio control Awning Slim Receiver io Plug and io Lighting Receiver	Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/ Tempura Quadra heating	<ul> <li>Not dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Accommodation of receiver in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	Heating Slim Receiver on/off io 2KW STAS3/STAK3	<ul> <li>Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 io Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>

## Somfy RTS radio technology

#### **RTS** receiver installation location

The RTS receiver for lighting is installed in the wall connection profile and can thus be easily accessed for servicing.



Wall connection profile with RTS (without LED option)

Product	Electronics	Somfy RTS control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
weinor PergoTex II	weinor PergoTex II drive	<ul> <li>Somfy RTS receiver integrated into wall bracket</li> </ul>	Somfy Universal Receiver RTS	<ul> <li>Situo 1 RTS Pure II/Situo 1 Soliris RTS Pure II/Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 RTS Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>
weinor PergoTex II LED	weinor PergoTex II drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy RTS receiver integrated into wall bracket</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for the LED spot- lights (with downstream power supply pack) integrated into wall bracket</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	Somfy Universal Receiver RTS and Lighting Slim Receiver RTS	Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/ Tempura Quadra heating	<ul> <li>Not dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Accommodation of receiver in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	Heating Slim Receiver RTS Plug	Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter

## Hard wired with Somfy control

Product	Electronics	Hard wired Somfy control	Controls
weinor PergoTex II	weinor PergoTex II drive	Somfy control for awning drive	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno
weinor PergoTex II LED	weinor PergoTex II drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy control for awning drive</li> <li>Commutator on site for the LED lighting</li> <li>LED power supply pack integrated into the wall bracket</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno and suitable light switch (on site)
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/ Tempura Quadra heating	Not dimmable	Suitable commutator (on site)

## Hard wired (existing switch/power supply on site)

Product	Electronics	Hard wired control	Controls
weinor PergoTex II	weinor PergoTex II drive	Awning commutator for the awning drive	e.g. Double rocker switches (on site)
weinor PergoTex II LED	weinor PergoTex II drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Awning commutator for the awning drive</li> <li>Commutator on site for the LED lighting</li> <li>LED power supply pack integrated into the wall bracket</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	e.g. Double rocker switch and suitable light switch (on site)
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/ Tempura Quadra heating	• Not dimmable	Suitable commutator (on site)

## Power supply pack for LED option





The power supply pack provides the power supply required to operate the LED. It is only required for the LED option.

Position of the power supply pack	Product
in the wall connection profile	weinor PergoTex II LED

#### Power supply pack installation strip for LED option

The power supply pack ① is positioned in the wall connection profile so that it is easy to access. The transformer/receiver bar is not supplied for the weinor PergoTex II without the LED option.

## Cable connection concept for three PergoTex II order options



Whether the VertiTex II vertical sun protection is installed on the guttering or on the sides or whether even connections for additional electricity components are provided: the cabling is integrated into the components in a weather-proof and concealed way and has been prepared optimally in the factory for all options. This ensures a visually appealing and secure installation.





# • Preparations for the mains connection for the installation of the VertiTex II vertical sun protection on the guttering (front right/front left)

The power lead ① for the VertiTex II ③ is routed through the guttering to one of the side channels. For the cable bushing ④, a hole is drilled into the guttering on site and a cable sleeve ⑦ is inserted. Depending on the order option or the drive side of the VertiTex II, the power lead for the VertiTex II is routed either in the left or in the right, and in exceptional cases also in the centre side channel ⑤ to the wall gap sealing profile and to the distributor box ⑨. A VertiTex II lead can be blocked out for each of the outside side channels, it is also possible to block out two leads with a centre side channel. Factory-made mounting preparation:

- Drilled hole and cable sleeve in the guttering 🕕
- Cable tie 3 (end cap cable fixing)
- Clips with cable sleeve
- 20x20x4 angle bracket with clip (front end cap bolting)
- Wedge seal (fixing the lead in place)
- Distributor box with attachment 9

## Preparations for the mains connection for the installation of the lateral VertiTex II

The VertiTex II (f) lead is routed in the wall-side rectangular profile (f) through a drilled hole and a cable sleeve (f) in the wall gap sealing profile (f) to the distributor box (f). There is not a drilled hole (f) yet for the VertiTex II power supply cable bushing in the rectangular profile. This makes it possible to fasten the locking bar and VertiTex II in a flexible manner without any annoying visible, unused drilled holes.

## **I** Preparations for the mains connection of optional electricity consumers on the guttering

The power supply **2** for optional electric components (e.g. an LED light bar) is supplied on site using the E-Box **4** screwed to the top groove in the guttering. The cable running to one of the side channels is mounted to the guttering **(B)** on site using clips. The cable has already been routed in the side channel and the end cap front in the factory and leads to the wall bracket.

# weinor PergoTex II Planning



\* The cross sections and dimensions depend on the pitch

\*\*Delta: dimension 🚯 minus dimension 🚯 = difference between installation height and head clearance height

## Site measurements – determining the projection and head clearance height

The pitch of the projection ① can be up to 25°. In contrast to other pergola awnings, the weinor PergoTex II can also be mounted without a roof pitch (0°) (can then only be used as sun protection). Ideal water drainage without a risk of pooling is provided from an angle of pitch of 8°. The maximum projection is up to 6,500 mm.

The **projection** is the basis for determining the costs for a weinor PergoTex II system. Using the following table (next page), the projection **1** of the weinor PergoTex II is determined on the basis of a given horizontal patio depth **3**. The projection is calculated on the basis of

- the angle of pitch 2,
- The delta\* 3,
- The patio depth 4.

The maximum **head clearance height ③** is 2,400 mm. If this head clearance height of 2,400 mm is exceeded optionally, the stability must be proven on site.

**The dimension (b)** is the spacing between the house wall and the side channel (specified with 88 mm in the example above, based on an angle of pitch of 10°). The spacing depends on the angle of pitch.

If necessary, the dimension **S** is used to determine the overall dimensions of the awning (wall bracket to front edge of guttering).

Angle of pitch	Spacing between the house wall and side channel (dimension (5))
8°	86
10°	88
15°	92
20°	97
25°	103

## weinor PergoTex II Planning

## **Determination of projection**

Delta* (in mm)	Projection depth (in mm) pitch																	
200	2091	0.6°	2590	0.5°	3090	0.4°	3590	0.4°	4090	0.3°	4590	0.3°	5090	0.2°	5590	0.2°	6090	0.2°
400	2117	6.2°	2611	5.0°	3108	4.2°	3605	3.6°	4103	3.1°	4601	2.8°	5100	2.5°	5599	2.3°	6098	2.1°
600	2161	11.7°	2647	9.4°	3138	7.9°	3631	6.8°	4126	6.0°	4622	5.3°	5119	4.8°	5616	4.4°	6113	4.0°
800	2223	16.9°	2698	13.7°	3181	11.5°	3668	10.0°	4159	8.8°	4651	7.8°	5145	7.0°	5640	6.4°	6135	5.9°
1000	2302	21.8°	2763	17.9°	3235	15.1°	3716	13.0°	4200	11.5°	4688	10.3°	5179	9.3°	5671	8.4°	6164	7.8°
1200			2840	21.8°	3502	18.5°	3774	16.0°	4252	14.2°	4734	12.7°	5220	11.5°	5709	10.5°	6199	9.6°
1400					3379	21.8°	3841	19.0°	4312	16.8°	4788	15.0°	5269	13.6°	5753	12.4°	6240	11.4°
1600					3466	24.9°	3918	21.8°	4380	19.3°	4850	17.4°	5325	15.7°	5804	14.4°	6287	13.2°
1800							4003	24.5°	4456	21.8°	4919	19.6°	5388	17.8°	5862	16.3°	6340	15.0°
2000									4540	24.2°	4995	21.8°	5457	19.8°	5926	18.2°	6400	16.8°
2200											5078	23.9°	5533	21.8°	5996	20.0°	6464	18.5°
2400													5616	23.7°	6072	21.8°		
2600															6153	23.5°		
465	2129	8.0°																
536			2634	8.0°														
606					3139	8.0°												
676							3644	8.0°										
746									4149	8.0°								
816											4654	8.0°						
887													5159	8.0°				
957															5663	8.0°		
1027																	6168	8.0°
	20	000	25	00	30	00			40	00	45	00	50	00	55	00	60	00
								Pa	tio dep	th (in m	m)							

**\*\* Delta:** difference between installation height and head clearance height

Table 1 (upper part): projection depth and projection pitch at delta 200/400/600/800/1,000/1,200/1,400/1,600/1,800/ 2,000 or 2,200 mm

Table 1 (lower part): projection depth and dimensioning of delta at the given pitch of the projection of 8°

Example 1: With a patio depth of 3,500 mm and delta\* of 600 mm (\*= bottom edge of wall bracket of 2,700 mm minus bottom edge of guttering of 2,100 mm), the projection is 3,631 mm and the pitch is 6.8°.

Angle of pitch	Projection depth (in mm)								
8°	2129	2634	3138	3643	4148	4653	5158	5663	6168
10°	2145	2653	3161	3668	4176	4684	5191	5699	6207
15°	2198	2716	3234	3751	4269	4787	5304	5822	6340
20°	2271	2803	3335	3867	4399	4931	5463	5996	
25°	2365	2917	3468	4020	4572	5124	5675	6227	
	2000	2500		3500	4000	4500	5000	5500	6000
	Patio denth (in mm)								

Patio depth (in mr

Table 2: projection depth at an angle of pitch of 8°/10°/15°/20° and 25°. Example 2: At an angle of pitch of 10° and a patio depth of 3,000 mm, the actual projection is 3,161 mm.

## Lateral covers – for each projection





The elegant cover plates (9) and cover caps (10) cover the mounting technology, protect it against dirt and produce a harmonious side view.

## Fabric folding height



The weinor PergoTex II fabric consists of a robust PVC material and is opened with a folding mechanism (folding awning). The fabric folding height **4** and the depth of the fabric safety shield **5** depend on the length of the projection/patio depth **1** and the number of staves **6**. Depending on structural requirements or individual customer requests, the number of staves can be increased to reduced the fabric folding height. The additional transoms may increase the depth of the fabric safety shield **5**.



Please note that due to thermal expansion, foreign bodies in transport profiles as well as mounting and manufacturing tolerances can lead to an uneven and sudden extension of the transoms in individual cases.

**Fabric end** 



#### Angle of pitch from 0° to 18°

For a weinor PergoTex II at an angle of pitch from 0° to 18°, the fabric end **⑦** is made by welting the fabric in the wall gap sealing profile **③**.

Fabric end 0° to 18°

#### Angle of pitch > 18° to 25°

From an angle of pitch >  $18^{\circ}$  to  $25^{\circ}$ , the fabric is mounted to the wall gap sealing profile using a velcro fastener ④ so that it is flush with the house wall.

Fabric end > 18° to 25°

## Additional support channel



From a width of more than 4,501 mm, a third support channel 1 is required.

weinor PergoTex II with third support channel

## Aluminium fabric protection roof



#### Quiet protection and drainage

The new aluminium fabric safety shield **1** has been designed as a hollow-chamber profile and has a noise-reducing effect when it rains. Rain water runs off the aluminium fabric safety shield **1** sideways to the right and left in a controlled manner **2**.



#### Controlled rain drainage

When fully extended, the front transom ③ is located directly above the guttering ④. A transparent plastic lip ⑤ drains the dripping or rain water directly into the guttering ④ and then into the water drains of the posts.

### Wall connection fabric rain guards



They ( $(\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{0})$ ) are available optionally, are fitted on the left and right and protect against sideways water ingress. The rain guards can be used for angles of pitch between 0° and 25°.

## Use of support profiles



From a safety shield depth of more than 720 mm and from a width of more than 4,000 mm, the use of aluminium support profiles **2** (order option/extra charge) is required. The support profiles are screwed to the safety shield retention profile using clamping sliders. Support profiles make it easier to install long safety shield profiles, since they can be placed on the already pre-assembled support profiles.

## Use of reinforcements for higher snow loads



The support profiles are omitted if the 100 x 40 mm safety shield reinforcement profile is used for reinforcement. The reinforcements are mounted in the factory in accordance with the specified snow load as well as width and projection. 02

## Aluminium fabric safety shield profiles and distribution of staves





	D	istribution of transon	15	Distribution of the safety shield			
Projection	Number of fabric sections	Number of 80 x 60 transoms	Number of 45 x 60 transoms	Number of 190 mm safety shield profiles	Number of 255 mm safety shield profiles	Fabric safety shield depth (values depend on the pitch; the values below refer to a pitch of 10°)	
2000 - 2400	3	2	2	2	0	669	
2401 - 3045	4	2	3	2	0	669	
3046 - 3690	5	2	4	1	1	734	
3691 - 4335	6	2	5	0	2	799	
4336 - 4980	7	2	6	3	0	859	
4981 - 5625	8	2	7	2	1	924	
5626 - 6270	9	2	8	1	2	989	
6271 - 6500	10	2	9	0	3	1054	

#### Determination of fabric package height/depth depending on the number of transoms

		Pitch							
Projection	Number of staves	5	5	8	8	15	15	25	25
		Depth	Height	Depth	Height	Depth	Height	Depth	Height
2000	4	520	273	510	292	484	335	436	391
2500	5	583	277	574	300	546	351	494	417
3000	5	583	340	574	362	546	413	494	479
3000	6	647	282	637	308	608	366	552	443
3500	6	647	332	637	358	608	416	552	493
3500	7	711	287	701	316	670	382	610	470
3500	8	775	256	764	289	732	363	668	461
4000	7	711	328	701	358	670	424	610	511
4000	8	775	292	764	325	732	398	668	496
4000	9	838	266	827	302	793	383	726	492
4500	8	775	328	764	360	732	434	668	532
4500	9	838	297	827	333	793	415	726	523
4500	10	902	275	891	314	855	403	784	522
5000	9	838	328	827	364	793	446	726	554
5000	10	902	303	891	342	855	431	784	550
5000	11	966	283	954	326	917	422	842	552
5500	9	838	360	827	396	793	477	726	586
5500	10	902	330	891	370	855	459	784	578
5500	11	965	308	954	351	917	447	842	577
5500	12*	1030	291	1017	337	979	441	900	581
6000	10	902	358	891	397	855	487	784	605
6000	11	966	333	954	376	917	472	842	602
6000	12*	1030	313	1017	359	979	464	900	604
6000	13*	1093	298	1081	347	1041	459	958	610
6500	11	966	358	954	401	917	497	842	627
6500	12*	1030	336	1017	382	979	486	900	626
6500	13*	1093	319	1081	368	1041	480	958	630
6500	14*	1157	305	1144	358	1103	477	1016	638
6500	15*	1221	294	1208	350	1164	477	1074	649

## Strong versatile all rounders

The stable and attractive posts for the weinor PergoTex II are part of the smart water drainage construction and drain the rain water in a controlled manner.



#### Integrated water drainage

The downpipe ① is invisibly integrated into one of the posts ②. When using post plates (in this figure, the example of large post plates is used), ③ the water drainage can be discharged directly downwards ④ or through a water outlet (on the post corner ⑤ or sideways/to the front ⑥). The height of the water outlet is variable ⑦ and can be easily adjusted on site by means of the two-part post design ⑧ ⑨.

Due to the two-part post design (3) and (9), the inside of the post can also be accessed easily, for example for cable routing or servicing work on the water drain pipe.



## **Post installation**

## Positioning of the posts



The standard position of the "outside posts" is the position in which the side channels and the guttering are aligned flush on the sides. (not flush in the case of centre/wall posts)



#### Indentation of posts

Depending on the structural requirements or customer requests, the posts can be indented up to a maximum of 30% of the total awning width. Indenting a post is



only possible on one side. The same applies to the symmetrical or asymmetrical indentation of the posts on both sides along the guttering.

## Post installation

## Post fixation on concrete floor slabs 1

The standard configuration is the installation of the weinor PergoTex II with post plates on a given concrete floor. The trimmed length of the post must always be specified on the installation sheet.

#### Bucket foundation **2**

Posts are set in concrete on artificial substrates reliably and flexibly at the same time. It is only set in concrete after installation, making the alignment of the posts easier.

## Deep-seated foundation **3**

The easy and flexible screw attachment on a screw foundation is carried out like the standard fixation (item 1).

#### Screw foundation **4**

They are an alternative to conventional foundations on natural ground. The calculated post length on the installation sheet increases by the spreader bar (X).



## **Foundation plan**



## Post installation – post plates



The weinor PergoTex II post plates connect the awning permanently to all substrates and complete the flexible, stabile framework mounting. Post plates are distinguished as follows: "outside post plates" () (for the awning's outside) and "centre/wall post plates" () (post plates for centre or outside posts that are flush next to a wall). Small post plates () (order option) are suitable for small folding awnings or for installation in showrooms.





#### 



#### Post plates for "outside posts"

- "Large post plate for outside posts"
  - Water drainage bushing
  - Can be turned by 180°
- "Small post plate for outside posts" (optional)
  - Flush with posts
  - Optimised for small awnings

#### Post plates for "centre/wall posts"

- Large centre/wall post plate
  - Fixation of centre posts
  - Fixation of an outside post next to a wall
  - Water drainage bushing
- Can be turned by 180°
- Small post plate for outside posts
- Optimised for small awnings

## **Turning of post plates**





If the post plates must be flush with the posts on the outside, since this is required, for example, by adjacent objects (e.g. walls or plants), the post plates can be turned by 180° **4**.

## Post plates oriented to the outside (standard)

Post plates turned to the inside

02

## Post installation – site measuring

## Post position and post distance



Standard: "outside post"

Standard with "centre/wall post" option (5); is only supplied on customer request; may be necessary for VertiTex II option

Left and right wall: "centre/wall post"

Left wall: left "centre/wall post" **(5)** and right "outside post" **(4)** 

Key: PP - Position of posts AP - Spacing of posts - Guttering **6** 

## **Post installation – accessory components**

## Aluminium post reinforcement profile







With the optional 300 mm aluminium post reinforcement profile **2** available for order (picture on the left), the stability of the post fixation is increased.

As a special design, an extra-long aluminium post reinforcement profile (production according to the post length) can also be delivered to stabilise extra-long posts (picture on the right). From a post length of more than 2,400 mm, weinor recommends inserting the aluminiumpost reinforcement profile or mounting additional posts. If the post height of 2,400 mm is exceeded, the stability must be proven on site.

### Cover cap for post plate





The cover caps ① of the post plates are elegant end elements of the awning so that screws are no longer visible.

The cover caps are put flush over the post plates.

Cover cap for large post plate (outside post); if necessary, it can be turned by  $180^\circ$  together with the post plates





Cover cap for large post plate (centre and wall), illustrated post with water drainage, if necessary, it can be turned by 180° together with the post plates

02

# weinor PergoTex II GE

## **Glazing elements and combinations**

The weinor PergoTex II pergola awning can be supplemented with weinor glazing elements (GE). The table shows the options and possible combinations of weinor sun protection systems and glass elements\* with the LITE side element (the triangular trapezoidal area below the side channel).

	Maximum wind load in wind strength on the Beaufort scale (wind speed)	LITE side element
VertiTex II with rail guide	5 (approx. 35 km/h) Must be opened with wind strengths over force 5 on the Beaufort scale to reduce the lateral wind load	•
VertiTex II Zip	6 (approx. 45 km/h) Must be opened with wind strengths over force 6 on the Beaufort scale to reduce the lateral wind load	•
VertiTex II with rope guide	5 (approx. 35 km/h) Must be opened with wind strengths over force 5 on the Beaufort scale to reduce the lateral wind load	•
Full glass sliding door w17 easy	6 (approx. 45 km/h) Must be opened with wind strengths over force 6 on the Beaufort scale to reduce the lateral wind load	•
w50-c fixed element		<ul> <li>Only with low pergola awning depth or in a position sheltered from the wind</li> </ul>
Super Lite w50-c fixed element		<ul> <li>Only with low pergola awning depth or in a position sheltered from the wind</li> </ul>

• can be combined  $\bigcirc$  on request

\* Further information (special permission if necessary) on our flexible all-glass elements can be found in the separate weinor glazing element product brochure.

## Flexible fixed glazing elements – w17 easy full glass sliding door



### Full glass sliding door w17 easy

Alongside an all-round view, weinor w17 easy full glass sliding doors provide reliable protection against wind and driving rain.

- Opens sideways
- Actuator for easy closing
- Guide profiles with several tracks (2 to 5 depending on the design)
- Standing construction
- Transparent gap seals between the lockplate systems' glass
- Pane packages which can be slid open to the left and right up to 6,600 mm (optional as lockplate design up to 10,000 mm; depending on the number of tracks)
- Maximum height of 2,600 mm
- Highly resistant to driving rain and windproof





w17 easy full glass sliding door with sliding option



w17 easy full glass sliding door with lockplate option

#### Note

From a wind strength of 6, the glazing elements must be opened completely and the weinor PergoTex II retracted completely so that there are no surfaces the wind can target. Larger cross sections and dimensions available on request.

## Fixed glazing – the w50-c LITE side element



### w50-c LITE side element

weinor offers the fixed glazing w50-c LITE **①** side element to go with the weinor PergoTex II. This side element is suitable for the trapezoidal area up to an angle of 25°.

- Highly transparent
- Two-part retaining section
- No screws in visible areas
- Attractively priced
- Fixed glazing
- Can be combined with the w17 easy full glass sliding door
- Can be combined with VertiTex II rail or rope guide versions
- Can be combined with the w50-c fixed element on request

#### Dimensioning of the w50-c LITE side element

At a low height of the w50-c LITE side element due to a low angle of pitch of the side channels, the fabric of the weinor PergoTex II can rest on the locking bar of the trapezium during the retracting and extending process as well as in the retracted position ①. In the long term, signs of abrasion may occur. By ordering additional transoms, the fabric folding height can be reduced and thus the possibility of the fabric resting on the locking bar of the trapezium minimised ②. Depending on the projection, up to 4 transoms (2 transoms in the case of the LED option) are possible as supplements.





**Large pitch of the side channel** The fabric does not rest on the locking bar of the trapezium.

**Low pitch of the side channel** The fabric rests on the locking bar of the trapezium (signs of abrasion on the fabric are possible).



**Low pitch of the side channel** With additional transoms (fabric folds), the fabric does not rest on the locking bar of the trapezium in the retracted position, since the fabric folding height is reduced by additional transoms.



## Fixed glazing – the w50-c LITE side element

Side element with wind support bracket, steel reinforcement in the locking bar and additional post

The size, surface and weight of the

w50-c LITE **1** side element result

from the pitch of the projection **5** 

and the depth of the weinor

PergoTex II **()**. Depending on the dimensioning of the side element, the additional use of

a steel girder\* (7) in the locking bar
(2)

an additional post 3

• or a wind support bracket **4** is required to prevent the locking

bar\*\* from being overloaded or to counteract an increased lateral wind load.

- Optionally integrated steel girder in the locking bar (prepared in the factory)
- \*\* w50-c LITE side element rests on the locking bar

Side element	Installation of a from a side e	Installation of a wind support bracket from a side element width		
W30-C LITE	Without an integrated steel girder	With integrated steel girder	With/without an integrated steel girder	
Pitch 0°–15°	> 4000 mm	> 4400 mm	> 3000 mm	
Pitch > 15° – 25°	> 3500 mm	> 3800 mm	> 3000 mm	





## VertiTex II – the vertical awning

The weinor VertiTex II vertical sun protection offers perfect visual and anti-dazzle protection. With its small cassette , the VertiTex II adapts inconspicuously to the weinor PergoTex II design.

weinor recommends the screens by weinor<sup>®</sup> collection. It includes four different, high-quality fabrics: StarScreen, Perluca, Soltis<sup>®</sup> and fibreglass screen. They all offer perfect sun protection and privacy for windows, the patio and balconies. Different degrees of transparency and how much air is let through are possible, depending on requirements.

#### Note: Soltis® fabrics are not available for VertiTex II Zip.

#### • Modern round and square design

The VertiTex II cassette and guide rails are available in square and round designs, each in the sizes 75 mm, 92 mm and 112 mm.

#### VertiTex II details:

- Suitable for large areas (6,000 x 2,400 mm)
- VertiTex II for installation on the guttering for the front side
- VertiTex II on the sides
- Rope guide or guide rails





weinor PergoTex II in combination with the VertiTex II square design



weinor PergoTex II in combination with the VertiTex II round design

#### Note:

The installation of the VertiTex II on the front side of a weinor PergoTex II is easily possible on the guttering and the posts without further additional elements. Lateral VertiTex II sun protection systems require a wall-mounted rectangular pipe and the horizontal locking bar or the LITE side element. You can find more detailed information in the separate VertiTex II product brochure.

## Dimensioning

#### Position of the VertiTex II on the guttering and on the posts of the weinor PergoTex II



Top view of the VertiTex II rail guide on the weinor PergoTex II (front and side)

Top view of the VertiTex II rope guide on the weinor PergoTex II (front and side)

02

## Water drainage for VertiTex II with rail guide

## weinor PergoTex II water drainage with vertical sun protection (centre post and outside post)

The post and water drainage are designed in such a way that the projection of the VertiTex II always reaches nearly down to the bottom. • Extra cast parts for one-sided or two-sided VertiTex II.





• weinor PergoTex II water drainage, outside post with post plate and outside cover cap and 2 VertiTex II rail guides



Top view of the VertiTex II rail guide on the post of the weinor PergoTex II (limited laterally)



Top view of the three VertiTex II rail guide systems on the centre post of the weinor PergoTex II with drain

## Water drainage for VertiTex II with rope guide

## weinor PergoTex II water drainage with vertical sun protection (centre post and outside post)

The posts and water drainage are designed in such a way that the VertiTex II rope guide and water drainage always reach nearly down to the bottom.





Top view of the three VertiTex II rope guide systems on the centre post of the weinor PergoTex II with drain

## Dimensioning

Post positions when using glazing elements and positions of the VertiTex II in connection with glazing elements



The weinor PergoTex II can be installed without any problems in combination with the w17 easy full glass sliding doors and the VertiTex without collision



Position of the VertiTex II in connection with 5-track GE with lockcase (optional design) for collision-free functioning



weinor PergoTex II standard configuration with front and lateral position of the GE (the guttering is shown sketched in orange)



weinor PergoTex II with centre post and front position of the GE (the guttering is shown sketched in orange)

# weinor PergoTex II Multi-section units



## **Multi-section units**

The maximum size of a weinor PergoTex II pergola awning with two posts is 7,000 x 6,500 mm. Wider systems can be extended easily to become a multi-section unit by placing 1-unit systems next to each other. The 1-unit systems installed next to each other have a separate motor drive and can thus be retracted and extended separately. Deliberately dispensing with a continuous fabric facilitates the installation and the units are easy to maintain in the event of servicing or damage.



Example of a multi-section unit with different dimensioning (on the left with additional side channel). The maximum unit width with two side channels is 4,500 mm.

## Connecting weinor PergoTex II systems using the coupling panel



The side channels of two units are connected and rain water can be prevented from entering between the units using the coupling panel **1**.

Coupling panel **1** on two side channels **2** 

Note: guttering coupling point always without water drainage

## Multi-section units with offset



weinor 2021 | 02 Pergola awnings | weinor PergoTex II

## weinor PergoTex II Multi-section units

## Gap covering in the wall offset with lateral wall bracket

The lateral wall bracket ① covers the gap between the wall and the unit in the wall offset area and protects against penetrating rain water. The lateral wall bracket ① can be adapted to the structural conditions and cut to the required length.



## Correction of different stave positions in the case of wall offset

Due to the different depth, the transoms have different spacing between each other ④. The transoms of the 1-unit systems have different positions when they are extracted. An adjustment of the stave positions is possible subject to a surcharge ⑤. Please note that the fabric folding height will be different after the transom positions are adjusted ⑥.





Different stave positions in the case of wall offset without adjustment **4** 



longer and shorter fold 6.

Stave positions in the case of wall offset with adjustment **S** 

## Type overview of single-unit and multi-section units

#### Standard dimensions, post positions and side channel positions



Coupling of octagonal shaft: 1/3 – 2/3 (units are considered separately)

02

## weinor PergoTex II Multi-section Units

## Type overview of single-unit and multi-section units

#### Standard dimensions, post positions and side channel positions



Coupling of octagonal shaft: 1/3 - 2/3 (units are considered separately)

# weinor PergoTex II Installation

## Installation on the wall using the continuous wall connection profile



The weinor PergoTex II is installed to a wall\* using the wall wall connection profile. On the one hand, the wall connection profile is used for the comfortable, visually appealing and stable installation of the weinor PergoTex II.

On the other hand, the wall gap sealing profile is the installation location for the remote receiver, the power supply pack (LED option) and other electric components which are installed there so that they are invisible, but can be still accessed easily for servicing.



Installation of the weinor PergoTex II on the wall using the wall connection profile







\* For the installation of the weinor PergoTex II on a ceiling, laterally on a wall or in a niche, the wall connection profile is mounted using angle brackets; see the following chapter: "Angle brackets".

## weinor PergoTex II Installation

## Angle bracket

Thanks to the weinor angle brackets, the weinor PergoTex II can be installed easily and in a stable and flexible manner for any structural condition.

## Installation on a ceiling, laterally on a wall or in a niche







Installation on a ceiling









weinor PergoTex II 200 x 100 x 10 x 140 mm angle bracket




### Installation of the guttering laterally on a wall



135

02

Installation of the guttering laterally on a wall using the guttering angle bracket





weinor PergoTex II guttering angle bracket

### Installation of the safety shield on the safety shield profile from below

Using the weinor 40 x 40 x 5 x 60 mm angle bracket, it is possible to screw the safety shield to the safety shield profiles from below if there is no space to install it from above (e.g. under a balcony).





Safety shield profile with  $40 \times 40 \times 5 \times 60$  mm angle bracket/side view



weinor PergoTex II 40 x 40 x 5 x 60 mm angle bracket





### weinor PergoTex II Installation

### **Rafter mounting**

On request, rafter mounting is possible (optional). The wall connection profile **1** is installed on rafters **2** on site using weinor rafter brackets **3** and mounting plates **4**. In the case of the optional rafter mounting, the wall connection profile is supplied without mounting holes pre-drilled **3** in the factory\*. Mounting holes in the wall connection profile must be drilled on site according to the rafter spacing.

\* No annoying visible mounting holes which are not used The optional rafter mounting must be specified when placing the order to ensure that the wall gap sealing profile is delivered without mounting holes **5**.





# weinor PergoTex II Basic



weinor PergoTex II Basic (without posts and guttering)

The weinor PergoTex II Basic is supplied without posts, fabric safety shield and guttering (basic version). It is always the suitable option in particular if the pergola awning is to be placed and installed on existing masonry or on existing posts. Due to its design, it cannot be combined with the VertiTex and the glazing elements, full glass sliding door, LITE side element or fixed glazing.



### Projection and pitch

With a weinor PergoTex II at an angle of

is made by welting the fabric in the wall

pitch from 0° to 18°, the fabric end 1

connection profile **2**.

From an angle of pitch >  $18^{\circ}$  to  $25^{\circ}$ . From an angle of pitch >  $18^{\circ}$  to  $25^{\circ}$ , the fabric is mounted to the wall connection profile using a veloco fastener **3**. Like the weinor PergoTex II, the weinor PergoTex II Basic can also be aligned with an angle of pitch from 0° to 25°.

The projection (5) of the weinor PergoTex II Basic is the basis for determining the costs. The basis is a given horizontal patio depth (6), the height of the wall bracket, the angle of pitch or the height of the bottom edge at the front. The projection (5) and dimensions (4) are determined in a similar way to the weinor PergoTex II

(please see the weinor PergoTex II Planning section, weinor PergoTex II projection).

### weinor PergoTex II Basic

### Installation on a wall







Installation on a wall (profile view)

### Installation on a wall



Installation on a wall using a 124 x 100 x 9 x 120 mm angle bracket





Installation on a wall (profile view)



weinor PergoTex II Basic 124 x 100 x 9 x 120 mm angle bracket





### weinor PergoTex II Basic

### Installation laterally on a wall or in a niche

20

40

20

20



Installation of the weinor PergoTex II Basic in a niche or laterally on a wall using the 100 x 50 x 5 x 120 mm angle bracket



weinor PergoTex II Basic 100 x 50 x 5 x 120 mm angle bracket







120

80

8.5



50

### Installation in a niche



Installation of the weinor PergoTex II Basic in a niche or laterally on a wall using the 200 x 100 x 10 x 120 mm angle bracket



weinor PergoTex II Basic 200 x 100 x 10 x 120 mm angle bracket



8





View of vertically aligned angle brackets





View of horizontally aligned angle brackets

# Installation on a ceiling or with larger lateral spacing







Installation under a balcony (ceiling installation) using the 200 x 100 x 10 x 140 mm angle bracket







Installation of the weinor PergoTex II Basic in a niche or laterally on a wall



weinor PergoTex II Basic 200 x 100 x 10 x 140 mm angle bracket







# Window, vertical and side screens



Window and vertical awning

# VertiTex II VertiTex II Zip | Rail | Rope

The **VertiTex II** vertical awning offers protection from the dazzling sun, prevents the patio and indoors from becoming uncomfortably hot and shelters you from prying eyes. Flooring, carpets, curtains and furniture are also preserved. Despite this you can still see outside, depending on the fabric type. Regardless of whether it's for the patio roof, pergola awning, window, balcony or conservatory: the VertiTex II is always perfect. Thanks to its compact design, the many versions and versatile protection against prying eyes and the weather, it is a real all-rounder among vertical awnings. The extremely small cassette adapts unobtrusively to any building facade. Whether it's the zip, rail or rope version: these plus points apply to all VertiTex II versions.



Round and square design: The cassette and guide rails are available in square and round designs, each in the sizes 75 mm, 92 mm and 112 mm.

### Attachment installation:

With widths up to 250 cm the simple attachment of the cassette to the guide rails ensures easy installation.





### weinor

**Opti-Flow-System®:** The tube doesn't bow under load resulting in the fabric being better positioned



Adjustable centre bracket: For use with larger cassette widths. It is adjustable and compensates for any installation allowances



Flush cover plate: Closes at the push of a button with elegant integrated logo

# Zip

For high winds Cassette size 92 and 112 mm



**Zip technology:** Held captive on the side, no light gap

# VertiTex II Highlights

Indented rope: Practical installation with attractive appearance if the rope guide cannot be on the outside

# Rail

Universal use Cassette size 92 and 75 mm



**Rotatable bearing:** So the bottom rail runs smoothly, even with high winds



For a light appearance Cassette size 92 and 75 mm



**Beautifully-shaped rope holder:** For an attractive look down to the smallest detail

# VertiTex II Benefits



### New modern design – in two shapes

The VertiTex II is available in different cassette sizes as well as in a square and round version. What makes the vertical awning a true asset for any facade:

- Attractive design
- Preferred colour to match the facade's appearance
- Wide selection of fabrics including many seamless without irritating transverse seams
- Sheer fabrics: Perluca and Soltis<sup>®</sup> (Soltis<sup>®</sup> not in combination with VertiTex II Zip)





# Patented Opti-Flow-System<sup>®</sup> for better fabric positioning

A taut fabric needs a straight roller tube. weinor solves this challenge with a floating fabric roller bearing. As a result, the fabric and roller tube are supported along the entire length when rolling it up and unrolling it from the bottom of the cassette and glide profile. Benefits:

- The fabric positioning is ideal even for fabrics up to 6 metres wide (max. 15 m<sup>2</sup>)
- Specially coated glide profile means the fabric enjoys long-lasting protection



Roller tube is unrolled: the glide profile ① supports the roller tube along its entire length and thus effectively prevents sagging.



Roller tube is rolled up: the roller tube steadily rolls into its holder 2. The glide profile continues to provide support along its entire length.

### VertiTex II Benefits



### **Cantilever housing bracket**

The VertiTex II can also be installed up to 250 cm wide without any wall brackets, by just attaching the cassette to the guide rails. The guide rails are optionally available in a version without drilled holes. They are smooth and therefore ideal for invisible installation – e.g. in the recess/reveal.

- Ideal for retrofitting business
- Panel mounting if there's no room for brackets, e.g. in the smallest niches, recess or on top



### Adjustable centre bracket\*

A centre bracket is required with widths of 260 cm or more. It is adjustable upwards and can therefore compensate for any installation allowances.

The centre bracket also prevents the cassette from sagging and therefore supports the weinor Opti-Flow-System<sup>®</sup>.

An adjustment screw is located at the bottom in the bracket which can be used to continuously raise the cassette by 5 mm.

\* Does not apply to VertiTex II with intended ropes



### Flush cover caps with button

The cassette cover caps are flush and really easily closed using the button.

- Fast installation because no screwing is required
- Beautiful seamless look
- Elegantly integrated logo



### **Rotatable bottom rail bearing**

The bottom rail with rotatable bearings ensures stable and secure running. It prevents jamming with all VertiTex II versions – even in high winds.

# VertiTex II Guide Versions

### VertiTex Zip – the wind-resistant version



The VertiTex II Zip is recommended in more windy areas. The fabric is held captive on both sides. The benefits:

- Guide rails with zip system for better fabric positioning
- Very wind-resistant
- Insect-repelling
- No light gaps at the side
- Extremely quiet operation
- Minimal noise in windy conditions
- System height up to 300 cm

### The zip system



High wind stability and smooth running is ensured among other things by:

- The elastic attachment of the fabric guide profile
- The stable guiding of the fabric by the side zip
- The bottom rail balanced weight
- Movable bottom rail support brackets
- The 2-part guide rails with fixed screw



Setting up the guide rail with bottom rail support bracket to the fabric



Threaded zip system without a light gap at the side

### VertiTex II Rail – the universal version



The VertiTex II with guide rail is recommended in slightly less windy areas. The fabric is reliably guided in the rail with the bottom rail. A small light gap remains between the fabric and rail.

- Bottom rail runs in the slider inside the guide rail
- System height up to 400 cm
- Greater installation allowance compared to VertiTex II Zip

### VertiTex II Rope/Indented rope – the light version



The VertiTex II with rope guide is the ideal solution for a delicate and light look.

- Less space required at the sides
- Good air circulation as the fabric hangs virtually free
- Narrow gap between the fabric and rope
- Chic rope holder for an attractive look down to the smallest detail
- System height up to 400 cm



Front view

Rear view

Only from weinor: the VertiTex II rope guide can be indented, if required. This doesn't just look beautiful but is also much more practical, depending on the use (max. 300 cm system height).

VertiTex II versions	VertiTex II Zip			
Technology				
Width (min.   max.)	70 cm   600 cm			
Max. height of system	300 cm			
Max. shadeable area	15 m <sup>2</sup>			
Cassette type 75 (86 x 75 mm)	_			
Cassette type 92 (101 x 92 mm)	•			
Cassette type 112 (121 x 112 mm)	0			
Multi-section unit	0			
Motor drive	•			
Gear drive	-			
Installation alternatives	can be installed on walls, ceilings and jambs			
Wind resistance class in accordance with DIN 13561	3			
Wind force on the Beaufort scale (km/h)	6 (to 49 km/h)			
Accessories				
Fixing materials	see Installation section			
Radio control	<ul> <li>see weinor/Somfy radio controls</li> </ul>			
No remote	<ul> <li>see weinor permanently wired</li> </ul>			
Frame colours				
47 standard frame colours	•			
Over 150 other RAL colours	0			
9 trend colours	•			
Other structural colours	0			
Fabric collections (max. system height)				
screens by weinor® StarScreen	○ (300 cm)			
screens by weinor® Perluca	• (300 cm)			
screens by weinor® Soltis® 86/92*	—			
weinor collections (acrylic and polyester)**	• (220 cm)			
screens by weinor® fibreglass screen	○ (300 cm)			

● standard ○ optional — unavailable

\* Soltis<sup>®</sup> fabrics have a plastic surface that is washable and durable at the same time. However, this easy to clean surface produces static friction on the fabric, which partly leads to it not rolling up smoothly. This brief jerking movement does not impair the product's function and durability in any way.

Please note that the Soltis® fabrics which are not in the screens by weinor® collection have a surcharge and longer delivery times. \*\*When selecting the small 75 cassette or VertiTex WeiTop, from a system height of 201 cm or above, the following patterns are only available on request: 3-872, 3-873, 3-874, 3-875, 3-832, 3-844, 3-883



Please note: the weinor product range may vary depending on the country.

# Product benefits in comparison

VertiTex II system comparison	VertiTex II Zip	VertiTex II rail	VertiTex II rope/ VertiTex WeiTop
System properties due to type of guide			
Wind stability	•••	••	•
Wind protection	•••	••	•
Quiet running	••	•	••
Sun protection	•••	••	••
Air circulation	•	••	•••
Insect screen	••	•	•
Installation flexibility	••	••	•••
Sideways light gap	no light gap	with sideways light gap	with sideways light gap
●●● excellent ●● very good ● good	•		

VertiTex II system comparison	VertiTex II Zip	VertiTex II rail	VertiTex II rope	VertiTex WeiTop
VertiTex II application ranges				
Windows	•	•	•	—
Balconies	•	•	•	—
Terrazza Originale / Plus DR160	—	—	—	•
Terrazza Originale / Plus DR220	•	•	•	—
Terrazza Pure	•	•	•	—
PergoTex II	•	•	•	—

• available — unavailable

**Note:** Please note that the privacy protection depends on the fabric quality. Please see the screens by weinor<sup>®</sup> collection for more detailed information.



### Available fabrics for the VertiTex II



### Selection of fabrics

There are different fabric types available for the VertiTex II. For vertical shading we recommend the fabrics from the screens by weinor® collection. Due to the different fabric gualities, a suitable woven fabric can be selected according to the application. You can find the maximum system heights per woven fabric type and unit width in the tables below.

You can find more details and the fabric qualities in the screens by weinor<sup>®</sup> collection booklet.

### VertiTex II Zip

Fabric type		Soltis® 86, 9	92	StarScreen	Perluca		Acryl		Polyester	Fibreglass screen
Unit width		177 cm	267 cm	325 cm	120 cm	240 cm	120 cm	240 cm	120 cm	up to 320*
Height of system	Cassette									
50 – 100 cm	92/112 mm	-	-	Ν	N	N	Ν	N	Ν	N
101 – 160 cm	92/112 mm	-	-	Ν	Q	N	Q	N	Q	N
161 – 220 cm	92/112 mm	-	-	Ν	Q**	N**	Q	Ν	Q	N***
221 – 250 cm	92/112 mm	-	-	N	-	Q only Cassette 112	-	Q only Cassette 112	-	N only Cassette 112
251 – 300 cm	112 mm	-	-	Ν	-	Q	-	Q	-	N/Q

\* For max. unit widths see collection boxes \*\* Perluca max. 215 cm system height \*\*\* Cassette 92 max. 200 cm system height

Fabric type		Soltis® 86, 9	2	StarScreen	Perluca		Acryl		Polyester	Fibreglass screen
Unit width		177 cm	267 cm	325 cm	120 cm	240 cm	120 cm	240 cm	120 cm	up to 320*
Height of system	Cassette									
50 – 100 cm	75/92 mm	Ν	Ν	Ν	Ν	Ν	Ν	Ν	Ν	Ν
101 – 160 cm	75/92 mm	Ν	Ν	Ν	Q	Ν	Q	Ν	Q	Ν
161 – 220 cm	75/92 mm	Q	Ν	Ν	Q**	N**	Q***	Ν	Q	N
221 – 250 cm	75/92 mm	Q	Ν	Ν	-	_	-	-	-	N only Cassette 92
251 – 300 cm	75/92 mm	Q	N/Q	Ν	-	_	-	-	-	Q/N only Cassette 92
301 – 340 cm	92 mm	Q	Q	Q	-	-	-	-	-	-
341 – 400 cm	92 mm	-	Q	Q	-	_	-	-	-	_

#### VertiTex II rail, rope and indented rope

\* For max. unit widths see collection boxes \*\* Perluca max. 215 cm system height \*\*\* Patterns 3-872, 3-873, 3-874, 3-875, 3-883, 3-832, 3-844 from system height 201 cm on request

N Seamless: seamless fabric

Q Transverse seam: fabric with transverse seam; structure of fabric runs crosswise, transverse seam always in the bottom or top third Not available

The structure of the fabric is runs crosswise, please note this with striped patterns.

When selecting the small 75 cassette or VertiTex WeiTop, from a system height of 201 cm or above, the following patterns are only available on request: 3-872, 3-873, 3-874, 3-875, 3-832, 3-844, 3-883

#### VertiTex II, seamless (S) /transverse seam (T)









Seamless

Transverse seam in the bottom third (standard, no surcharge)

Transverse seam in the top third Preferred transverse seam (on request, no surcharge)



Recommendation: Use extra-wide fabrics to avoid a transverse seam.

### **General notes**

Vertical awnings and textile screens are primarily used as pure sun and glare protection. weinor products comply with the current state of the art where the Guideline for the estimation of awning product characteristics and the Guideline for the estimation of manufactured awning fabrics are applied. The guidelines can be obtained from the ITRS industry association (www.itrs-ev.com).

tured awning fabrics, 12.2016).



#### V-shaped waves

V-shaped waves may appear symmetrically coming from the top edge with wider systems as well as with units as facade systems with brackets as mounting technology. The reasons for this are the fabric's dead weight and structure as well as the sagging waves and loads on the brackets and/or facade substructure.

**Important information about awning fabrics for vertical awnings** The following factors may influence the appearance with vertical awnings (excerpt from the Guideline for the estimation of manufac-



### Markings across the fabric

The bunching up of the awning is the result of it being connected to the roller tube and transverse seams. This may leave marks across the fabric (due to the winding up) and is technically unavoidable. These effects do not have a negative impact on the quality, function or service life of the fabrics and are not a reason for rejection.





#### Creasing

Zip guided fabrics have slight creases around the edge in particular. This may occur as the fabric and zip lie on top of each other and have to cover different distances when being wound up. Resulting in the fabric being rolled up several times over the circumference on the edge when being wound up. This appears as a crease when extended. Its appearance is accentuated by the weather conditions. This optical effect does not impair the function and is therefore not a reason for rejection.

#### Bottom rail bowing under load

The bottom rail bowing under load is caused by the interaction of different materials, geometries and fabric designs. As a result, it cannot be prevented that there may be an up to 5 mm uneven submergence of the projection profile when closing the cassette. The awning fabric is not visible and still lies protected in the cassette.

#### Quality

weinor tested the VertiTex II with 10,000 operating cycles. This corresponds to the highest class 3 in accordance with EN 14201 (Testing method for mechanical endurance).

# VertiTex II Controls



#### **BiConnect control components**

High-quality electric drives allow the VertiTex II to run safely and comfortably. Thanks to the weinor Opti-Flow-System<sup>®</sup> and a torque limiter, it always closes perfectly. There are two options available for the BiConnect control.

### weinor BiConnect radio technology

Product	Electronics	BiConnect control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
VertiTex II	VertiTex II drive	BiConnect remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette (recommendation)	Elero RollTop-868 remote-controlled motor Elero SunTop-868 remote-controlled motor (cassette 112 mm)	<ul> <li>BiEasy 1M/5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>BiEasy App</li> <li>1MW-3V wall transmitter</li> </ul>
VertiTex II	VertiTex II drive	• External BiRec receiver	BiRec MA-K	<ul> <li>BiEasy 1M/5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>BiEasy App</li> <li>1MW-3V wall transmitter</li> </ul>

### VertiTex II Controls

### Somfy io-homecontrol<sup>®</sup> radio technology

Product	Electronics	Somfy io-homecontrol control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
VertiTex II	VertiTex II drive	Somfy io remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette	Somfy io remote-controlled motor	<ul> <li>Situo 1 io Pure II/Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 io Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>

### Somfy RTS radio technology

Product	Electronics	Somfy RTS control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
VertiTex II	VertiTex II drive	• External Somfy RTS receiver	Somfy Universal Re- ceiver RTS	<ul> <li>Situo 1 RTS Pure II/Situo 1 Soliris RTS Pure II/Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 RTS Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>

### Hard wired with Somfy control

Product	Electronics	Firmly wired Somfy control	Controls
VertiTex II	VertiTex II drive	Somfy control for awning drive	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno

### Hard wired (existing switch/power supply on site)

Product	Electronics	Firmly wired control	Controls
VertiTex II	VertiTex II drive	Awning commutator for the awning drive	e.g. Double rocker switches (on site)



Some options are subject to a surcharge. For prices, please refer to the weinor awnings price list.

### VertiTex II Zip – installation on walls and embrasures







Cassette type 92, round

Cassette type 92, square





Cassette type 112, round



Cassette type 112, square



When wall-mounted, there is a gap between the cassette and the fixing surface due to the system.

# VertiTex II Zip – installation on ceilings and embrasures







Cassette type 92, round





Cassette type 112, round



Cassette type 112, square



03

# VertiTex II Rail – wall mounting





Cassette type 92, square





Cassette type 75, square



Cassette type 75, round



\* Required space for installation

# VertiTex II Rail – roof mounting







Cassette type 92, round





Cassette type 75, square



Cassette type 75, round



\* Required space for installation

weinor 2021 | 03 Window and vertical awnings | VertiTex II

# VertiTex II Zip /Rail – illustrations

Installation situation for VertiTex II Zip (cassette type 92 and 112) Rail (cassette type 75 and 92) Dimensioning for wall and niche installation.

System width min. 100 min. 100 10 Min. 4 mm with niche installation 112/ 92/ 75 0 ----<u>7.5 ± 1.5</u> Π System height 4 Thomas 55 16 5 50 2 0 The 55



# VertiTex II Zip /Rail – illustrations

### Determining the system width for installation of multi-section units



### VertiTex II Zip /Rail – cross-sections

### Guide rail wall mounting



Drilled holes are provided as standard for wall mounting.





#### Guide rail niche installation







The guide rails can also be ordered without drilled holes for mounting. The drilled holes for niche installation have to be made on site.

# VertiTex II Rope – wall mounting









### Cassette type 75, square



Cassette type 92, round



Cassette type 75, round



\* Required space for installation

When wall-mounted, there is a gap between the cassette and the fixing surface due to the system.

03

# VertiTex II Rope – roof mounting







Cassette type 92, square



Cassette type 75, square





Cassette type 75, round



# VertiTex II Indented rope – wall mounting











Indented rope guides are only possible with a 75 mm cassette.

03

Cassette type 75, round





### VertiTex II Rope – illustrations



### Installation situation for VertiTex II indented rope, cassette type 75 for wall and niche

# VertiTex II Rope – illustrations

### Determining the system width for installation of multi-section units



### VertiTex II Rope – rope holder in embrasure

### Rope holder mounting on side, flush with cassette width

VertiTex 38x 20x 20 mm rope holder (120579)



### **Rope holder mounting on the side with 8 mm offset for expansion joint in the embrasure** Mini VertiTex rope holder (110636)




## Rope holder for VertiTex II Rope



VertiTex 38 x 20 x 32 mm standard rope holder





g





VertiTex 38 x 20 x 20 mm rope holder





29





Large rope holder





## Rope holder for VertiTex II Rope



Small rope holder



Mini rope holder



Windowsill rope holder



Double windowsill rope holder



ÈÈ















## Wall mounting – brackets



Cassette type 75 wall bracket





Cassette type 92/112 wall bracket



Cassette type 92/112 wall bracket (optional)







## Continuous wall bracket for VertiTex II Indented rope







## Roof mounting – brackets



Cassette type 75 ceiling bracket







Cassette type 92 ceiling bracket







Cassette type 112 ceiling bracket



20



## Small parts replacement set VertiTex II



- 1 2x button spring part D14, 3x4.3 mm
- 2 x button ball part D14, 2 x 4.4 mm
- 3 2x blind rivet 4x8x9 mm
- **4** 2x o-ring 12x8x2 mm
- **5** O-ring 17 x 2 mm
- 6 Flat self-tapping screw with ISR ST3, 9 x 9.5 mm
- 🕖 Buffer
- 8 1x cable sleeve 8/10/4 mm
- Self-tapping countersunk hex head screws ST3, 5 x 16 mm
- **(**) Socket head cap screw with ISR M6x8 mm
- Rope tensioner
- 4x M5x4 grub screw with hexagon

## Cable outlet versions for Zip/Rail/Rope (indented)

#### **Back-fitted cable outlet**





#### Standard design

Dimensions apply to all cassettes and sizes.

#### **Top-fitted cable outlet**





A hole can be drilled in the cap on site Dimensions apply to all cassettes

and sizes.



Side screen

## Paravento

The stylish side awning **Paravento** protects against inquisitive glances, sunlight and cool side winds. As a cost-effective solution, the lean but robust cassette can be mounted practically anywhere. The **Paravento** creates attractive highlights in combination with a state-of-the-art pattern from the weinor fabric collection. Special function fabrics provide privacy protection and allow an outside view during the day. Therefore, the **Paravento** is a flexible and elegant alternative to fixed elements such as fences, walls and hedges.



**Large widths possible:** Up to 4 metres



Slimline dimensions: Elegant design



**Stable construction:** High fabric tension

**Alternative corner post:** Flexible fabric guide

## Paravento Highlights

### Matching fabrics and frame colours: Coordinated to existing products



#### **Diagonal cloth cut:** trapezium shape available to compliment other products





Handle and suspended grip bracket: Position of handle is adjustable

**Two mounting options:** Screw in post

Insertable post with ground sleeve

## Paravento Benefits



## Simple installation – for universal application

The Paravento can easily be fitted to any house wall or patio construction – both sideways or front. It can be mounted simply and quickly due to the corresponding attachments.

- Attractive and cost-effective alternative to fences, hedges, walls etc.
- Can be extended and retracted in one step
- Can be easily unhinged in winter and stored to save space



## For an attractive appearance: elegant design, large range of fabrics

When it is retracted, the entire technology is concealed completely in the aluminium cassette of the Paravento. With its lean dimensions of only 142 mm x 120 mm, the cassette adapts unobtrusively to any environment.

- Elegant design
- Extensive weinor fabric selection also many seamless versions
- Translucent and breathable climate-control fabrics Soltis® and Perluca
- 47 RAL frame colours as well as 9 conservatory trend structural colours



## Robust construction – the prerequisite for high fabric tension

The elegant appearance of the Paravento is based on the lean design and light construction style. Simultaneously, its robust construction makes it especially resilient – the fundamental prerequisite for optimum fabric tension.

- Extruded aluminium profiles for high stability
- Optimum fabric tension due to barrel arbor in the fabric roller
- High wind resistance, wind resistance class 2



## Perfect addition to existing products

It is not only in its function as side protection that the Paravento is an excellent addition to awnings, patio roofs and pergolas. It is also the perfect complement in frame colours and fabric patterns.

- Colour matching is simple, even when retrofitted
- Fabric can match the main awning, or other sun protection
- Trapezium-shaped versions as an addition to folding arm awnings

# Paravento Technology

	Paravento
Technology	
Max. cassette height	250 cm
Max. projection length	400 cm, max. surface area of the fabric 8 m <sup>2</sup>
Cassette size (w x h)	142 x 120 mm
Handle	1 piece; from cassette height 1,876 mm 2 piece
Installation alternatives	wall mounting, different posts, angle bracket
Fabrics	
my collections	<ul> <li>with seam: all fabrics available; without seam: all uni-coloured fabrics available extra-wide</li> </ul>
Soltis®	$\bigcirc~$ with seam: Soltis® 86, 92; without seam: Soltis® 86, 92 available extra-wide
Perluca	<ul> <li>without seam: all fabrics available extra-wide</li> </ul>
Options/accessories	
Grip bracket in a handrail	0
Insertion post, 120 cm incl. ground sleeve	0
Screw-in post, 120 cm	0
Insertable corner post, 180 cm incl. ground sleeve	0
Screw-in corner post, 180 cm	0
Angle bracket for housing bracket	0
Angle bracket for grip bracket	0
Quality	
Tested up to	Wind resistance class 2 according to DIN 13561 (wind strength 5 on the Beaufort scale)

● standard ○ optional — unavailable

# Paravento Technical details

## Handle and attached grip bracket – simple to attach and detach



After the drawing of the Paravento, the handle attached to the bottom rail is suspended in the grip bracket. The grip bracket can be fitted to a wall or a patio post. Alternatively, an insertable or screw-in post is available, which can be fitted to the patio floor, and/or in a concrete bed.

Handle and suspended grip bracket



Handle and suspended grip bracket detailed view

## Your fabric is always taut – optimum tensioning via the barrel arbor



The barrel arbor integrated in the fabric roller bearing provides optimum fabric tensioning. It is connected to one of the head plates via a square opening.

Fabric tensioning via barrel arbor

## **Column foot**



Base plate for the screw in post





Base plate for the screw in post

## Paravento Technical details

## Posts

#### Screw-in and insertable post



Screw in post



Insertable post

After the Paravento is drawn the grip bracket is attached to a screw in or insertable post. The screw in post is fitted directly to the floor, while the insertable post can be set into the ground.



#### The corner post



The corner post

The fabric is guided over an angle via a corner post For privacy protection on several sides. Both the screw-in and the insertable post can be used as a corner post. In this case, a grip bracket is not included in the delivery. The corner post can be mounted to the floor or cast in concrete.



## Paravento Fabric selection

## Fabric selection for seamless fabrics



All seamless fabrics from the current weinor fabric collection can be used for this version. The structure of the textile runs vertically to the cassette.

in cm	Soltis® 86, 92	Soltis® 86, 92	Acrylic		Perluca		Polyester
Unit width	177	267	120	240	120	240	120
Cassette height							
80* - 127.5	Ν	N	N	Ν	Ν	Ν	Ν
127.6 – 187.5	Ν	N	-	N	-	Ν	_
187.6 – 250	-	N	-	Ν	-	Ν	-

N Seamless: seamless fabric

- Not available

<sup>\*</sup> Up to a cassette height of 112 cm, the projection length is max. 300 cm, from a cassette height of 112.1 cm the projection length is max. 400 cm.

## Fabric selection for sewn fabrics



All fabrics from the relevant weinor fabric collection can be used for this version. The structure of the textile runs crosswise to the cassette.

in cm	Acrylic	Perluca	Polyester
Unit width	120	120	120
Cassette height			
80* - 127.5	Т	Т	Т
127.6 – 187.5	Т	Т	Т
187.6 – 250	Т	Т	Т

T Transverse seam: fabric with transverse seam; the seam runs crosswise to the dropping direction;

the stripe pattern runs crosswise to the dropping direction

\* Up to a cassette height of 112 cm, the projection length is max. 300 cm, from a cassette height of 112.1 cm the projection length is max. 400 cm.



# Paravento Planning

## **Cross-sections**







Cross section of bottom rail

Cross section of post (all types of posts)

## Paravento Planning

## **Cassette dimensions**







As seen from the back

As seen from the side

View as seen from the front

## Paravento with trapezium shaped fabric



The Paravento with trapezium-shaped fabric is the ideal addition to for example a weinor folding arm awning. As its shape corresponds to the pitch of the awning, it creates a well-protected area with this combination – for additional side protection from inquisitive neighbours, low-lying sun and cool side winds. The Perluca fabric is not available for this Paravento version.



# Paravento Installation

## Installation with housing bracket



Housing brackets



Installed housing bracket



house wall.



Version 1

**1**25.5

For this mounting option, the cassette is pivoted into the housing bracket and fastened with safety screws. The cassette is then securely mounted. Two housing brackets are sufficient to mount the Paravento directly to the



Installation with housing bracket

## Installation with wall and housing bracket



For this mounting option, the wall bracket is mounted to the wall and the housing bracket to the cassette. The cassette is attached to the wall bracket and, in this way, can be removed at any time. The side awning Paravento can be mounted either on the left or on the right.

#### Wall bracket



Wall bracket with installed housing bracket



Version 2

Installation with wall and housing bracket

## Paravento Installation

## Angle bracket



# Conservatory/roof awnings



Conservatory/roof awning

## WGM Top WGM Top Stretch | OptiStretch

Thanks to its flexible construction the **WGM Top** from weinor fits over almost any building project, from wooden, aluminium or steel patio roof, to the weinor Glasoase<sup>®</sup> and warm conservatory. It reliably protects against overheating, thus contributing to a pleasant atmosphere. The WGM Top also has quite a bit to offer in terms of design. With its slimline profiles, almost screwless look and a huge variety of fabric patterns and frame colours it integrates subtly into the overall appearance of the building facade.



**Attractive design:** Slimline, no visible fixings



## **Receiver housing on top:** The BiConnect receivers are housed on top of the cassette making it easy to access for maintenance purposes



weinor carriage system: Quiet and easy running

## Flexible support brackets:

The awning height can be individually adjusted thanks to the different support bracket versions (fixed/adjustable, standard/special version)



Fixed support bracket top in 4 heights: 80, 120, 150 and 220 mm



Adjustable support bracket top in 3 heights: 120–165, 165–210 and 210–255 mm



Adjustable support bracket top for multi-section units in 3 heights: 120–165, 165–210 and 210–255 mm

**New flat rope:** Quiet and extremely tear-resistant

# WGM Top Highlights



04

**The best protection:** Can be combined with a sun/wind sensor



Ideal for large areas – especially commercial applications: Ideal for covering very large areas, especially in the commercial sector

**Exciting versions** 



**WGM Top OptiStretch:** Held captive on 4 sides, no light gap, with strip reinforcement



WGM Top Stretch: Held captive 2 sides, with light gap, with corner reinforcement

## WGM Top Benefits



## An ideal atmosphere under any conservatory or on any glass roof

The WGM Top can be retrofitted to a whole range of different untrussed roofs. It fits perfectly on a weinor Glasoase<sup>®</sup>, as well as on a warm conservatory and on a wooden or aluminium patio roof. It protects against overheating, thus contributing to a pleasant atmosphere. The WGM Top impresses due to its slim, elegant design with almost no visible fixings.

- Suitable for larger cross sections and dimensions up to 36 m<sup>2</sup>
- Wind-resistant up to wind force 6 on the Beaufort scale
- Elegant design without any visible screws, caps or fixings



## Reliable tension system – with new quiet flat rope

The tried and tested tension system is used with the WGM Top with a new flat and at the same time tear-resistant rope. The rope winds up extremely quietly over itself instead of side by side. This prevents the rope from bouncing.

- Long-lasting equalised fabric tautness with pulley block technology
- The flat rope is quiet and tear-resistant. It prevents the rope from twisting and bouncing and does not fray on the sides.



## Tried and tested weinor carriage system

The tried and tested carriage impresses with highly-precise and quiet running.

- Precision rollers for reduced rolling friction, resulting in very easy and quiet extension and retraction
- Accurate guiding of the flat rope in the carriage
- Loose-fitting bearing on carriage prevents it from jamming in side winds



## Supporting brackets for every requirement

The conservatory awning's support brackets top impress with their subtle and almost screwless look. The awning height can be individually adjusted thanks to the different versions (fixed, adjustable, standard and special version). Even several WGM 2030 support brackets are compatible with the WGM Top.

## WGM Top Benefits



## **Receiver housing on top:**

The well designed and positioned housing is positioned on top of the cassette for ease of access.

- Easier access to the motor input and components
- The programming of the drive's end positions is made easier by the housing position
- Decoupling of the wind sensors during maintenance



## **Clever Stretch and OptiStretch versions**

**Stretch WGM Top:** the consistent tension and fabric position creates a cosy atmosphere.

• Held captive on 2 sides, cost effective solution, easy to install **OptiStretch WGM Top:** excellent tension without any light gaps or sagging fabric edges. In very large constructions, it reduces the central sagging of the fabric during extension and retraction.

- Held captive on 4 sides, no light gap
- Long-lasting equalised fabric tautness with pulley block technology
- The flat rope is quiet and tear-resistant. It prevents the rope from twisting and bouncing and does not fray on the sides.



## Multi-section units – for large cross sections and dimensions

The maximum size of a WGM Top is 6,500 x 5,000 mm or 6,000 x 6,000 mm. The individual units installed next to each other have a separate motor drive and can thus be retracted and extended separately.



## BiSens sun, wind and rain sensors

BiSens radio sensors provide maximum convenience. They open the awning automatically when the sun comes out and retract it in the rain and wind.

Available in the following versions:

- Sun, wind and rain sensor
- Sun/wind sensor
- Sun sensor

# WGM Top Technology

WGM Top versions	WGM Top Stretch OptiStretch Top conservatory awr		
Technology			
Max. axial dimension for 1 unit (width: axial dimension + 61 mm)	6,500/6,000 mm	6,500/6,000 mm	
Max. projection	5,000/6,000 mm	5,000/6,000 mm	
Max. fabric area	36 m <sup>2</sup>	36 m <sup>2</sup>	
Cassette size (width x height)	323 x 166 mm	323 x 166 mm	
Motor drive	• as standard	• as standard	
Gear drive	—	—	
Pitch	0°*-45°	0°*-45°	
Installation alternatives	See WGM Top installation section	See WGM Top installation section	
Lighting			
Accessories			
Fixing materials	see WGM Top installation section	see WGM Top installation section	
Controls			
Radio control	0	0	
No remote	•	•	
Weather sensors			
Sun/wind sensor BiConnect BiSens SW-230 V	0	0	
Sun/wind sensor solar powered BiConnect BiSens SW-Solar+**	0	0	
Sun/wind/rain sensor BiConnect-BiSens-SWR-230V	0 0		
Quality			
Tested up to	wind force 6 on the Beaufort scale, wind resistance class 3*** and rain class 2 (56 l/h/m <sup>2</sup> rainfall) according to DIN 13561		

\* Please note that on a shallow pitch the WGM Top must not be used in the rain. Even if a rain sensor is used, water may accumulate and ruin the awning. Due to the low pitch or horizontal installation, the fabric may also get wet when retracted due to driving rain. The risk of water accumulation (pooling) is very low with a pitch of 14° or greater.

\*\* Not suitable for awnings used as privacy shields.

\*\*\* The wind resistance class applies with a supporting bracket height of max. 220 mm (fixed support bracket) and/or 265 mm (adjustable support bracket).



## WGM Top Controls



#### Receiver housing on top:

The cleverly designed housing is positioned on top of the cassette for easy access for maintenance purposes and gives simple access to the motor. The control box allows for easy access, for example to program the drive's end positions. The wind sensors can also be decoupled during maintenance.



Cables can be inserted into the channel on the back of the cassette using the V2 cable fixing elements.

The WGM Top from weinor is only available with motor drive. On the basis of radio technology, it can be controlled using the weinor BiConnect or the Somfy io-homecontrol<sup>®</sup> and RTS systems. A wired version is also available.

## weinor BiConnect radio technology

Product	Electronics	BiConnect control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
WGM Top	WGM Top drive	BiRec receiver integrated into control box	BiRec MA-K	<ul> <li>BiEasy 1M/5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> <li>1MW-3V wall transmitter</li> </ul>

C

## WGM Top Controls

## Somfy io-homecontrol<sup>®</sup> radio technology

Product	Electronics	Somfy io-homecontrol control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
WGM Top	WGM Top drive	<ul> <li>Somfy io remote-controlled motor integrated into unit</li> </ul>	Somfy io remote-controlled motor	<ul> <li>Situo 1 io Pure II/Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 io Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>

## Somfy RTS radio technology

Product	Electronics	Somfy RTS control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
WGM Top	WGM Top drive	Somfy RTS receiver integrated into unit	Somfy Universal Receiver RTS	<ul> <li>Situo 1 RTS Pure II/Situo 1 Soliris RTS Pure II/Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 RTS Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>

## Hard wired with Somfy control

Product	Electronics	Firmly wired Somfy control	Controls
WGM Top	WGM Top drive	Somfy control for awning drive	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno

## Hard wired (existing switch/power supply on site)

Product	Electronics	Firmly wired control	Controls
WGM Top	WGM Top drive	Awning commutator for the awning drive	e.g. Double rocker switches (on site)



**Note:** Please see the "Accessories" technical brochure for further details regarding the drive and control.

Some options are subject to a surcharge. For prices, please refer to the weinor awnings price list.



# WGM Top Stretch/OptiStretch

# The Stretch and OptiStretch system in comparison

The **WGM Top Stretch** and **OptiStretch** consist of identical frame constructions and use the same tried and tested weinor tension system with a new flat rope that winds up extremely quietly. The fabric guide is the difference between the two systems. In the Stretch system, the fabric is tensioned between the fabric roller bearing and the front profile in the ascending direction, while in the OptiStretch, the fabric is additionally guided sideways in the guide rail. The WGM Top OptiStretch thus achieves a significantly higher degree of fabric tensioning.

## The Stretch system

## The OptiStretch system

**OptiStretch version** 



• Good fabric tautness also for Soltis® fabrics

## Fabric tensioning technology Rope clamping system



Tension system with 2 tensioned springs (number of springs depends on the projection and width)

#### Tension system with 1 tensioned spring (depends on projection and length of spring)



## Wall sealing profile (optional)



The wall sealing profile\* conceals the gap between the wall and the cassette. This is a useful option if there is no on-site protection above the cassette, e.g. a roof overhang.

## Side cover plates form A/form B (option)



The cover plates prevent light coming in on the sides. They are always supplied to fit the support bracket height and 3000 mm long and are trimmed on site. They are available selectively in a flat version (form A) and folded at 90° with a fold edge of 20 mm.

Side cover plate form A



\* Please note that the wall sealing profile cannot be used in conjunction with the receiver housing. Instead the Hirschmann coupling can be attached under the wall profile using clips. The receiver housing can only be used when there is a clearly defined gap between the cassette housing and the wall or when fixing with a wall bracket.

## Use of fabric support roller at bottom



A fabric support roller is used under the WGM Top as standard with 4001 mm or more. The use of fabric support rollers depends on the support bracket height (generally a fabric support roller cannot be used with 80 mm support brackets).

The use of additional support brackets and fabric support rollers is recommended:

- In strong winds
- With weak substructures

04

## Use of fabric support roller at top



An additional fabric support roller can also be installed above the fabric on request.



## **Overall views of individual units**

#### Side view of individual unit



The WGM Top with 120 mm high support bracket – when determining the mounting height take obstacles such as rain gutters etc. into account.



Installation with wall brackets only possible between  $3^\circ$  and  $30^\circ$ 



Installation with 0° inclination without wall brackets

#### Note:

Please note that on a shallow pitch the WGM Top must not be used in the rain. Even if a rain sensor is used, water may accumulate and ruin the awning. Due to the low pitch or horizontal installation, the fabric may also get wet when retracted due to driving rain. The risk of water accumulation (pooling) is very low with a pitch of 14° or greater.

## With rain class 2 (56 l/h/m<sup>2</sup> rainfall), the risk of water pooling is reduced from a pitch of 14° or above.

#### Front view of individual unit



WGM Top with 120 mm high support bracket

## Overall views of individual units

## Top view of individual unit



#### WGM Top cross section



## Multi-section unit



The maximum size of the WGM Top is 6,500 x 5,000 mm or 6,000 x 6,000 mm. Wider systems can be extended easily to become a multi-section unit by placing individual units next to each other. The individual units installed next to each other have a separate motor drive and can thus be retracted and extended separately.


### WGM Top Planning

## Determining dimensions for multi-section units

#### Total cassette width = total axial dimension for roof supports + 61 Total axial dimension <u>31 3</u>1 Axial dimension A1 Axial dimension A2 <u>30.5</u> 30.5 Unit 1 Unit 2 Fabric gap up to 25 mm with Stretch version Fabric gap up to 25 mm with Stretch version Projection No fabric gap with No fabric gap with the OptiStretch version the OptiStretch version Cassette width 1 Cassette width 2 曲 企 Total axial dimension for roof supports

#### Determining dimensions for multi-section units with 2 panels

#### Calculation of cassette width

(Total axial dimension for roof supports/2) + 30 mm. Only applies if both units have the same axial dimension.

#### Determining dimensions for multi-section units with 3 units or more\*





#### Calculation of cassette width 1 + 3 (outside cassettes): (Total axial dimension for roof supports/3) + 30 mm Calculation of cassette width 2 (inside cassettes): (Total axial dimension for roof supports/3) – 1 mm

\*The determining of measurements applies to a maximum total width of 14 m and only if all distances between centre lines are the same and the number of roof units can be divided by 3.

## WGM Top Planning

## Multi-section unit with wall or guttering offset



Different offset versions can be designed on request (e.g. guttering offset).



Multi-section unit with offset (profile view)



Multi-section unit with wall offset (top view)

Multi-section unit with guttering offset (top view)

Unit 2

## Individual unit



**Mounting alternative without sideways bordering** Fixing with top support bracket.

#### Mounting alternative with one-sided bordering, top support bracket

WGM Top on a conservatory with e.g. adjacent wall on side. Fixing with wall-mount angle bracket and top support bracket.

Mounting alternative with wall bordering on both sides

The installation is mounted directly onto the brickwork using wall-mount angle brackets.

## Multi-section unit with a part of the balcony or wall offset





## Mounting alternative with one-sided bordering in wall offset

Fixing with wall-mount angle bracket and top support bracket



#### Mounting alternative for multi-section unit with part of the balcony in the centre.

Legend: A2 = axial dimension of sun protection K2 = cassette width 2 B2 = balcony width

#### Mounting alternative with double-sided bordering and wall offset

Fixing with wall-mount angle brackets directly on the brickwork and top support bracket adjustable for multi-section units.



Legend: A3 = axial dimension of sun protection K3 = cassette width 3 B3 = masonry clearance width

## Support brackets

#### Top support bracket

Height: 80 mm, 120 mm, 150 mm and 220 mm









165 mm – 210 mm, 210 mm – 255 mm





80

50

100

80

50

(0)

100

10

20 10

9

20



30

40

30

<u>.</u>

40

120 - 165 / 165 - 210 / 210 - 255

80 / 120 / 150 / 220



## Special support brackets

#### Special support bracket

59 – 400 mm customisation







Special support bracket installation

#### Cross-shaped support bracket

59 – 400 mm customisation



Cross-shaped bracket installation







## Other support brackets







## Installation on weinor Terrazza



Installation on a Terrazza patio roof

**Support bracket mounting plate** for weinor Terrazza L 150 roof support **Support bracket mounting plate** for weinor Terrazza S 110 roof support







6



16





04

## U profile for fins



Installation using U profile on fins





## Base plates for support brackets



## Special brackets

**Z-shaped bracket** (2 100 x 50 x 5 x 120 mm wall-mount angle brackets)













04

Installation on lateral wall or niche using a Z-shaped bracket

#### Wall-mount angle bracket (100x50x5x120 mm)











Installation on a lateral wall

## Special brackets

#### Long angle bracket (200 x 100 x 10 x 120 mm)





Conservatory/roof awning

## Sottezza II Sottezza II Stretch/LED | OptiStretch/LED

The elegant, attractive **Sottezza II** conservatory awning is used beneath the patio roof. The awning fabric will therefore come into its own, remain permanently attractive and the patio will have a cosier feeling. At the same time, it provides effective glare protection. As an underlay awning, the **Sottezza II** is especially suitable for patio roofs and conservatories, which guarantee an adequate air circulation and thus avert the formation of high temperatures due to their construction. Furthermore, for conservatories, it is an intelligent supplement to the outside sun protection. If it has to be retracted in case of heavy wind, this inside wind-protected **Sottezza II** then comes into operation and provides the desired sunscreen. **Sottezza II** is an all-rounder and can be used for virtually every right-angled patio roof due to the customised production which is accurate to the millimetre.





**Sottezza II OptiStretch:** Fabric guided sideways for perfect fabric fit, without any fabric gap at all

Installation-friendly system: Only 2 fitters required



#### Versions:

Sottezza II LED with high-power LED spotlights

without LED

# Sottezza II Highlights

04



Tried-and-tested clamping system: Taut fabric and wind stability



weinor carriage system: Precise and quiet

## Sottezza II Benefits



## Proven and reliable tension system from the conservatory awning family

The tried-and-tested tension system also ensures even fabric deployment as well as fast and easy installation with the Sottezza II.

- Textile rope from open ocean sailing technology, break and strain resistant, tried-and-tested for many years, no elongation
- Long-lasting equalised fabric tautness with pulley block technology



## weinor carriage system – precise and low-noise

The tried and proven weinor carriage impresses with its especially easy and quiet ascending and retraction.

• Plastic precision rollers for reduced rolling friction



## Elegant design – LED lighting integrated into the cassette

The cassette with the integrated LED lighting discreetly blends into the architecture of the patio roof.

- Inconspicuous cassette design without visible bolting
- 30,000 LED light hours with lowest energy consumption (85% electricity saving compared to halogen technology)
- LED infinitely dimmable using weinor's BiConnect control

## Sottezza II Benefits



## Installation-friendly system – only 2 installers required

- Cassette and side channels must be installed separately. Complete floor installation is unnecessary
- weinor LED lighting integrated into the cassette no extra installation necessary
- simple installation of the awning: attach housing and release (drag & drop installation technique), no preliminary screwing required
- Minor roof inaccuracies can be equalised by sliding the cassette or side channels



### Clever Sottezza II versions – Stretch and OptiStretch

**Sottezza II Stretch:** The even tautness of the fabric creates a cosy atmosphere.

- Slimline side channels
- Sottezza II Stretch open at the sides with the the minimum fabric gap (approx. 0.5 to 2.5 cm)

**Sottezza II OptiStretch:** completely closed all around, ensures tensioned fabric without sideways hanging fabric edges. In very large constructions, it reduces the central sagging of the fabric during ascending and retraction.

- Slimline side channels
- Sottezza II OptiStretch completely without fabric gap

# Sottezza II Technology

Versions of the Sottezza II	Sottezza II Stretch	Sottezza II OptiStretch	Sottezza II Stretch LED	Sottezza II OptiStretch LED
Technology				
Max. width	600 cm (to 400 cm projection)	600 cm	600 cm (to 400 cm projection)	600 cm
Max. projection	500 cm (only up to 450 cm cassette width)	500 cm	500 cm (only up to 450 cm cassette width)	500 cm
Max. fabric area	24 m <sup>2</sup>	30 m <sup>2</sup>	24 m <sup>2</sup>	30 m <sup>2</sup>
Cassette size (width x height)	307 x 148 mm	307 x 148 mm	307 x 148 mm	307 x 148 mm
Gear drive	—	—	—	—
Motor drive	as standard	as standard	as standard	<ul> <li>as standard</li> </ul>
Awning pitch*	3° – 45°	3° – 45°	3° – 45°	3° – 45°
Installation alternatives	installation under glass	installation under glass	installation under glass	installation under glass
High-power LED spotlight lighting	—	integrated into the cassette		• integrated into the cassette
Fabric				
weinor fabric collection	•	•	•	•
Soltis® 86, 92	<ul> <li>only up to width 400 cm x projec- tion 250 cm</li> </ul>	-	<ul> <li>only up to width 400 cm x projec- tion 250 cm</li> </ul>	-
Other fabric collections	0	0	0	0
Accessories				
Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	0	0	0	0
Controls				
Radio control	0	0	0	0
No remote	•	•	•	•
Weather sensors				
Sun/wind sensor BiConnect BiSens SW-230 V	0	0	0	0
Sun/wind sensor solar powered BiConnect BiSens SW-Solar+	0	0	0	0
Sun/wind/rain sensor BiConnect-BiSens-SWR-230V	0	0	0	0

 $^{\ast}$  Sottezza II in combination with Terrazza Pure with 0  $^{\circ}$  pitch possible.

● standard ○ optional — unavailable

## Sottezza II LED



## LED lighting – 30,000 hours of lighting require minimal energy consumption

The select high-power LED components represent the very best in weinor quality:

- Integrated into the cassette
- Atmospheric light thanks to special glass lenses
- Lighting remains on even when awning is retracted
- Especially energy-efficient (85% power saving in comparison to halogen technology)
- Operating life of 30,000 hours
- Infinitely dimmable when used with BiConnect radio control
- Easy to service: simply replace individual LED lights without uninstalling the awning

#### **Integrated LED lighting**

Awning width in cm	Number of separate LED spotlights	Awning width in cm	Number of separate LED spotlights
81 – 110	1	330 – 384	6
111 – 164	2	385 – 439	7
165 – 219	3	440 – 494	8
220 – 274	4	495 – 549	9
275 – 329	5	550 – 600	10

# Sottezza II Controls



#### Installation location for receiver, power supply pack and further electrical components

The receiver is accommodated in the cassette. The faceplate can be easily be opened for servicing purposes. The receiver is then easily accessible.

## weinor BiConnect radio technology

Product	Electronics	BiConnect control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
Sottezza II	Sottezza II drive	BiRec receiver integrated into cassette	BiRec MA-K	<ul> <li>BiEasy 1M/5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> <li>1MW-3V wall transmitter</li> </ul>
Sottezza II LED	Sottezza II drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>BiRec combi-receiver for main drive and LED spotlights (with integrated power supply pack) integrated into cassette</li> <li>Dimmable LED</li> </ul>	BiRec MLED	<ul> <li>BiEasy 5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> </ul>
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/ Tempura Quadra heating	<ul> <li>Dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Accommodation of receiver in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	BiRec HD	<ul> <li>BiEasy 5M/15M Go! hand transmitter</li> <li>App</li> </ul>

### Sottezza II Controls

## Somfy io-homecontrol® radio technology

Product	Electronics	Somfy io-homecontrol control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
Sottezza II	Sottezza II drive	Somfy io remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette	Somfy io remote-controlled motor	<ul> <li>Situo 1 io Pure II/Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 io Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>
Sottezza II LED	Sottezza II drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy io remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for the LED spot- lights (with downstream power supply pack) integrated into cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	Somfy io remote-controlled motor and io Lighting Receiver Variation on/off	Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/ Tempura Quadra heating	<ul> <li>Not dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Accommodation of receiver in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	Heating Slim Receiver on/off io 2KW STAS3/STAK3	<ul> <li>Situo 5 io Pure II/Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 io Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>

## Somfy RTS radio technology

	_			
Product	Electronics	Somty RTS control	Remote receiver	Transmitter
Sottezza II	Sottezza II drive	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor	<ul> <li>Situo 1 RTS Pure II/Situo 1 Soliris RTS Pure II/Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II hand transmitter</li> <li>Smoove 1 RTS Pure Shine wall transmitter</li> </ul>
Sottezza II LED	Sottezza II drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor integrated into cassette</li> <li>Additional Somfy receiver for the LED spot- lights (with downstream power supply pack) integrated into cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	Somfy RTS remote-controlled motor and RTS lighting receiver	Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5     Soliris RTS Pure II hand     transmitter
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/ Tempura Quadra heating	<ul> <li>Not dimmable, additional receiver required</li> <li>Accommodation of receiver in the design bar provided for this purpose or the Tempura Quadra box</li> </ul>	Heating Slim Receiver RTS Plug	Situo 5 RTS Pure II/Situo 5     Soliris RTS Pure II hand     transmitter

Note:

Please see the "Accessories" technical brochure for further details regarding the drive and control.

Some options are subject to a surcharge. For prices, please refer to the weinor awnings price list.

## Sottezza II Controls

## Hard wired with Somfy control

Product	Electronics	Firmly wired Somfy control	Controls
Sottezza II	Sottezza II drive	Somfy control for awning drive	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno
Sottezza II LED	Sottezza II drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Somfy control for awning drive</li> <li>Commutator on site for the LED spotlights</li> <li>LED power supply pack integrated into the cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	e.g. Soliris Smoove Uno and suitable light switch (on site)
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/ Tempura Quadra heating	not dimmable	Suitable commutator (on site)

## Hard wired (existing switch/power supply on site)

Product	Electronics	Firmly wired control	Controls
Sottezza II	Sottezza II drive	Awning commutator for the awning drive	e.g. double rocker switches (on site)
Sottezza II LED	Sottezza II drive and LED lighting	<ul> <li>Awning commutator for the awning drive</li> <li>Commutator on site for the LED spotlights</li> <li>LED power supply pack integrated into the cassette</li> <li>LED not dimmable</li> </ul>	e.g. double rocker switch and suitable light switch (on site)
Accessories (optional)	Tempura/ Tempura Quadra heating	• not dimmable	Suitable commutator (on site)



# Sottezza II Stretch | OptiStretch

### The Stretch and OptiStretch system in comparison



The Sottezza II Stretch and OptiStretch consist of identical frame constructions and use the same conservatory awning clamping system. The fabric guide is the difference between the two systems. In the Stretch system, the fabric is tensioned between the fabric roller bearing and the projection profile in the ascending direction, while in the OptiStretch, the fabric is additionally guided sideways in the guide rail. The OptiStretch thus achieves a significantly higher degree of fabric tensioning.

#### The Stretch system

#### The OptiStretch system





Fabric gap max. 2.5 cm on each side

In the Stretch System, the fabric is tensioned between the fabric roller bearing and the projection profile in the ascending direction. A gap remains between the fabric and the side channel.

- Lining of the side edges is reduced by the pulley system
- Good fabric tautness also for Soltis® fabrics
- The fabric slot can be up to 2.5 cm wide
- In the case of large installations, the fabric sag can be up to approx 15 cm
- It is possible to use distance rope to support the fabric (number depends on projection)
- Stretching of side edges in the case of acrylic and polyester is possible

In the OptiStretch system, the sunscreen fabric is guided in a PVC fabric guide profile inside the side channel. This allows an optimum fabric tensioning to be achieved in all 4 directions and the system is completely closed without a sideways gap.

- Optimum tensioned fabric
- No possibility of sideways reveal
- Without fabric gap
- Fabric taut on 4 edges
- better rolling properties

04

## Sottezza II Stretch | OptiStretch

## Fabric tensioning technology tension system





#### Important note

The rope used on the tension system begins to wind around a rope drum located inside the cassette as soon as the awning ascends. The width of the rope drum is enough to take several wound lengths of rope lying side by side. Once there is no more space to the side, the coil in the next bearing will wind over the one before. The rope can sometimes jump and cause noise.

## Sottezza II Stretch

## Distance rope with the Sottezza II Stretch/LED

#### Use of distance rope in the Sottezza II Stretch/LED\*



#### Effect of a distance rope\*



Detail support wire bracket

#### **Distance ropes**

Distance ropes are used in large constructions to stop the fabric sag.

#### **Operation of the distance ropes:**

• After the awning has been completely ascended, after installation, the fabric's side edges should be 3 cm beneath the bottom edge of the side channels at most.

#### Position of the support wire brackets:

- In the vicinity of the side channel brackets
- •Evenly distributed across the projection diagonal at regular spacing
- \* Schematic diagrams for the demonstration of the mode of action of the rope tensioner.

#### Standard number of support wires

Cassette	Projection in cm							
width in cm	up to 200	201–250	251-300	301–350	351–400	401–450	451-500	
up to 400	-	-	-	-	1	1	2	
401 - 450	-	-	1	1	2	2	3	
451 - 500	-	_	1	1	2	2		
501 – 550	_	_	1	1	2			
551 – 600	_	_	1	1	2			

No distance rope is required

▲ Unit size is not possible

The following table shows the minimum number of distance ropes depending on the projection and cassette width. Additional distance ropes are recommended in case of heavy wind impact. The Sottezza II OptiStretch does not require a distance rope on principle. These are optionally available for the achievement of the wind resistance class 2.

# Sottezza II Planning

## General views of flat single-panel flat system

#### Lateral view of Sottezza II



#### Sottezza II Stretch

#### Sottezza II OptiStretch



#### **Minimum spacings**



The spacing between Sottezza and the wall must be at least 40 mm. The spacing between Sottezza II and the guttering must be at least 20 mm.

## Sottezza II Planning

## **Cross-sections**

#### Cross sections and dimensions Sottezza II



#### Cross sections and dimensions Sottezza II LED



#### Detail side channel Sottezza II



Side channel Stretch



OptiStretch side channel with additional fabric guide profile

## Sottezza II fitted to a Terrazza patio roof





Sottezza II indented

Sottezza II almost flush

During installation on a patio roof, the Sottezza II can be indented in such a way to allow the subsequent retrofitting of glazing elements (left). No glazing elements can be retrofitted if the cassette width of the Sottezza II corresponds to the width of the patio roof. The Sottezza II is then flush with the outside roof support of the roof (right).

## Cabling of individual and multi-section units



#### Individual units:

The Hirschmann coupling with lead is fixed to the rear of the cassette cable with V2 cable fixings. (standard)



#### Multi-section units:

The lead is fixed with V2 cable fixings at spacing of approx. 700 mm. (optional)



The Sottezza II power cable 1. leads along the Sottezza II 2. to the power line connection on the right here.

### Slideability of the cassette in the bracket of the headplate (allowances)

#### **Standard position**



Inside the headplate bracket, the cassette can be pushed lengthwise to the cassette axis (6 mm) or in the direction of the projection (10 mm). Also see the figures:

#### Lengthwise shifting to the cassette axis



#### Shifting lengthwise to the projection





04

### **Rectangular patio roof**



Please note: The patio roof must be arranged at a right angle to enable the proper installation of the Sottezza II.

View as seen from above

## The faceplate and the bottom of the cassette



The bottom of the cassette is opened after the installation to ensure that the rope is running properly around the pulley block. A strap holds the bottom of the cassette open. The faceplate can be easily unclamped. This provides easy accessibility to a receiver or a power supply pack for servicing purposes.

## Serial bracket

#### Headplate bracket



Complete

#### Side channel bracket



Complete



98

You will receive two headplate brackets as standard for installation on the patio roof. This is mounted to the cassette.

#### Headplate bracket consisting of:

- Bracket cover conservatory awnings IB 2013
  Headplate bracket conservatory awnings IB 2013
- Bracket cover connector conservatory awnings IB 2013 black
- Carriage 28 x 28 x 4 mm M6x20
- Flange nut with ratchet M6 A2
- Set of screws II conservatory awnings IB 2013

When attaching to a Terrazza patio roof, use the current weinor price list to find the standard number of side channel brackets.

#### The side channel bracket consists of:

- Side channel bracket conservatory awnings IB 2013
- Bracket cover conservatory awnings IB 2013
- Bracket cover connector conservatory awnings IB 2013 black
- Carriage 28 x 28 x 4 mm M6x20
- Flange nut with ratchet M6 A2
- Set of screws II conservatory awnings IB 2013

## Fixing to a patio roof/number of installation points



#### Standard bracket type

Screws point upwards, i.e. from beneath the roof support or other supports above them. Additional brackets are recommended in case of a weak untrussed roof. The set does not include material required to retrofit a Sottezza II to a pre-built untrussed roof. **Please refer to current weinor price list.** 

#### No. of fastener points

Sottezza II	Projection in	ojection in cm				
	up to 150	151–250	251-350	351-450	451–500	
Minimum number of installation points	4	4	6	6	8	

The table shows the minimum number of installation points on a patio roof. The indicated number of fasteners is included in the delivery. When the Sottezza II is installed beneath another roof, additional brackets may be necessary.

### **Special bracket**

The brackets listed here can be used in various installation scenarios. Especially for fixing to roofs from other manufacturers.

#### Niche angle bracket 60 x 60 x 5 x 100 mm





40

10

40

The angle bracket is required for lateral fastening to walls, in alcoves or to vertical elements.

#### Complete niche angle:

Includes screws to fasten the side channel/ headplate bracket:

- 2x socket head cap screws M5x16
- 2x hexagonal nuts M5
- 2x washer 5,3

#### Base plate 100 x 30 x 5 mm





Fixing materials for shimming are advisable for uneven installation foundations.

#### Base plate complete:

Including set of screws for installation on weinor Terrazza (for 2 base plates):

- 4x socket head cap screws M5x16
- 2x fixing slider 60 x 8 x 3 mm
- Set of screws II base plate WGM IB 2013

#### **Fixing plates**

The fixing plates are required for the sideways offset of the brackets and in case of narrow roof supports.

weinor 2021 | 04 Conservatory/roof awnings | Sottezza II







#### Complete fixing plates 100 x 60 x 5 mm or 100 x 100 x 5 mm: including set of screws

- 2x socket head cap screws M5x16
- 1x fixing slider 60 x 8 x 3 mm
- 2x countersunk hex head screws M5x10
- 2x hexagonal nuts M5
- 2x washer 5,3
- Set of screws II base plate WGM IB 2013

#### Fixing plate 100 x 100 x 5 mm:

- including further set of screws
- 2x socket head cap screws M5x16
- 2 x washer 5,3
- 2 x hexagonal nuts M5
- Set of screws II base plate WGM IB 2013



For installation on roof supports, we recommend that you order the set of screws conservatory awnings IB 2013 on Terrazza with fixing slider (option).

## Use of niche angle bracket

Different possibilities for the use of niche angle brackets





#### Arbitrary patio roof









#### Any patio roof with sideways vertical elements







Without angle brackets but fitted with base plate on site

#### Legend:

**BN** = width of niche **HK** = headplate bracket HT = side channel bracket **K** = cassette width

## Examples of installation with niche angle bracket with connection + base plate

The two examples below show how special fastening materials are used. The right brackets must be used to suit the specific architecture and type of shading required.

- The side channel brackets on the right side can be underlayed with base plates or with fixing plates at the connection point.
- The boltings at the connection point are located sideways on the roof support or directly in the roof support depending on the width of the roof support.

#### Sottezza II fixed to roof with sideways vertical element



#### Sottezza bracket with sideways offset



## Installation of Sottezza II spacer (square profile)





# Stand-alone awnings





**Construction for stand-alone awnings** 



The strong and robust weinor **Duofix** frame system is suitable for all applications wherever a large area needs to be covered. The back to back installation is the ideal solution for weather protection where a free standing solution is needed.

weinor 2021 | 05 Stand-alone awnings | Duofix

There is a choice of 3 different awning options for the Duofix. In all cases they are fitted either side of the framework resulting in a back to back free standing double awning.



**Opal Design II** Premium cassette awning in timeless classic design to provide sun protection for large areas



**Topas with roof** Entry level awning that provides exceptional value for money. Ideal for commercial applications



Plaza Viva Pergola awning with fixed posts to the front for additional stability. Can cover a very large area and provides additional weather protection



Screw-in base: Made from stable galvanized and powder coated steel
# **Duofix** Highlights

#### Integrated lighting:

If the Opal Design II LED is opted for, integrated LED spotlights ensure even lighting under the roof. **Robust brackets:** Ensure ideal fixing positions and can be moved axially





Upgrades:

Optional fitting of accessories, e.g. Tempura heating system or LED bars

# **Duofix** Technology

	Modular product upgrade Opal Design II/LED	for the products Topas with roof	Plaza Viva
Technology			
Max. projection	350 cm	350 cm	500 cm
Max. width	650 cm	650 cm	600 cm
Multi-section unit max. width	1,300 cm (multi-section units	possible on request)	1,000 cm x 500 cm or 1,200 cm x 400 cm
Total height of system	approx. 324 cm	approx. 323 cm	approx. 323 cm
Height (bottom edge of crossbeam)	approx. 300 cm	approx. 300 cm	approx. 300 cm
Construction head clearance height	Construction head clearance height should be at least 190 cm at the front		
Mounting alternatives	mounting on free-standing a	reas	
LED lighting	Opal Design II LED	0	Plaza Viva LED
Fixing	selectively screw-in base or s	lab base for mounting on floor	
Max. shadeable area with 1-part constructions	45,5 m² (22,75 m² per side)		60 m <sup>2</sup> (30 m <sup>2</sup> per side)
Accessories			
Tempura heating system	0	0	0
Light options	0	0	0
Controls			
Radio control	0	0	0
No remote	•	•	•

● standard ○ optional — unavailable

#### **Technical features**

- The height of the Duofix (with Opal DesignII/LED and Topas with roof) is calculated on the basis of a 14° pitch and a clearance height of 190 cm
- Topas with roof and Opal Design II/LED can only be fitted to the Duofix construction with a max. projection of 350 cm, Plaza Viva with up to 500 cm and without the Valance Plus option
- The unit sizes must be the same on both sides and extended evenly

# **Duofix** Assistance

	Material	Surface treatment	Quality features	Benefits
Screw-in base	ST 37 construction steel	splash-proof for out- side and inside use	surface permanently scratch and weather-proof	permanently protected against corrosion, attractive look
Slab base	ST 37 construction steel	pre-treated with a chrome-free coating and powder coated	surface permanently scratch and weather-proof	the dismantlable slab base provides solidity and flexibility, does not require a permit according to building law as it is not permanently fixed to the ground
Universal rail with cover cap for Tempura heating system	extruded aluminium	pre-treated with a chrome-free coating and powder coated	surface permanently scratch and weather-proof	pre-equipped on Duofix, easy to install several Tempuras
Wall bracket 85/150 mm	extruded aluminium	splash-proof for out- side and inside use	surface permanently scratch and weather-proof	easy to move the brackets into the required position
Wall bracket (wall connection)	extruded aluminium	splash-proof for out- side and inside use	surface permanently scratch and weather-proof	duo fix connected on both sides of the building, permanently protected against corrosion, attractive look
Safety shield for Topas with roof	extruded aluminium	pre-treated with a chrome-free coating and powder coated	surface permanently scratch and weather-proof	guarantees protection against rain and the inclusion of electrics (BiConnect components)
Safety shield for Opal Design II/LED	extruded aluminium	pre-treated with a chrome-free coating and powder coated	surface permanently scratch and weather-proof	guarantees protection against rain and the attachment of electrics (BiConnect components)
Tempura heating system	corrosion-resistant materials	pre-treated with a chrome-free coating and powder coated	splash-proof for out- side and inside use	sophisticated quality, precise and weather resistant down to the very last detail, identical components make servicing easier
Light bar	corrosion-resistant materials	pre-treated with a chrome-free coating and powder coated	surface permanently scratch- and weather-proof	the weinor LED light bars and LED Design can be ordered with sun protection, details in the Accessories section
Post	ST 37 construction steel	hot-dip galvanized and powder coated	surface permanently scratch and weather-proof	permanently protected against corrosion, attractive look
Crossbeam	extruded aluminium	pre-treated with a chrome-free coating and powder coated	surface permanently scratch and weather-proof	flexible attachment of all fixing elements
Screw-on bracket	extruded aluminium	pre-treated with a chrome-free coating and powder coated	surface permanently scratch and weather-proof	universal attachment of brackets for the Topas with roof folding arm awning and Opal Design II/LED
Screws	stainless steel		rustproof	no rust, no significant wear

# **Duofix** Fixings

#### Brackets



Duofix 85 bracket for Topas with roof



Duofix 180 bracket for Opal Design II



Duofix 180 bracket for Plaza Viva



Topas wall brackets on 85 bracket



Opal Design II wall brackets on 180 brackets



Plaza Viva wall brackets on 180 brackets

## Fixing alternatives for Topas with roof, Opal Design II and Plaza Viva



Different retainers ensure the easy mounting of awning products. A roof rounds off the look.



Duofix with Plaza Viva

Screw-in base for mounting to the foundation or optionally with mobile slab base for different locations.

Duofix with Opal Design II



Screw-in base (standard) (galvanized and powder coated)



Multi-section unit screw-in base (galvanized and powder coated)

## View of Duofix with Opal Design II



## View of Duofix with Plaza Viva





Rain class 2 is met:

- with Plaza Viva with fixed posts from a pitch of  $14^\circ$
- with Plaza Viva with telescopic posts from a pitch of 4° with fully lowered post

## Slab base framework assembly



Duofix can be ordered optionally with slab bases.

Standard  $50 \times 50 \times 5$  cm patio slabs can be purchased from the local construction specialised trade to weigh them down.

## Possible use of Duofix without storm protection when closed with the use of a slab base with a total weight of 680 kg

System width	Wind zone + territory category						
in cm	WZ 2, MP B	WZ 2, MP K	WZ 3, MP B	WZ 3, MP K	WZ 4, MP B	WZ 4, MP K	WZ 4, GK I
650	•	-	-	-	-	_	-
600	•	•	-	-	-	_	-
550	•	•	•	-	-	_	-
500	•	•	•	-	-	_	-

#### Legend:

WZ = wind zone acc. to DIN 1055-4

MP B = inland mixed profile acc. to DIN 1055-4, table B3 (covers all other territory categories)

MPK = coast mixed profile acc. to DIN 1055-4, table B3 (coastline 5 km, Baltic Sea islands)

GK l = territory category l acc. to DIN 1055-4, table B1 (North Sea islands)

(Values) = required counterweight in kg

#### **Recommendation for service description**

When using the constructions in coastal areas and on the North Sea islands, the constructions must be taken down from wind strength 11 or more or secured additionally at your own discretion, unless it is an area not protected from the wind.

## Storm protection using a rope clamping system



## Possible use of Duofix with storm protection when closed with the use of a slab base with a total weight of 680 kg

System width	Wind zone + territory category						
in cm	WZ 2, MP B	WZ 2, MP K	WZ 3, MP B	WZ 3, MP K	WZ 4, MP B	WZ 4, MP K	WZ 4, GK I
650	•	•	•	•	•	-	-
600	•	•	•	•	•	-	-
550	•	•	•	•	•	-	-
500	•	•	•	•	•	•	-

#### Legend:

WZ = wind zone acc. to DIN 1055-4

MPB = inland mixed profile acc. to DIN 1055-4, table B3 (covers all other territory categories)

MPK = coast mixed profile acc. to DIN 1055-4, table B3 (coastline 5 km, Baltic Sea islands)

GK I = territory category l acc. to DIN 1055-4, table B1 (North Sea islands)

(Values) = required counterweight in kg

#### Recommendation for service description:

When using the constructions in coastal areas and on the North Sea islands, the constructions must be taken down from wind strength 11 or more or secured additionally at your own discretion, unless it is an area not protected from the wind.

## **Cross-sections**

#### Sectional drawing of Duofix with Topas with roof - not to scale



#### Sectional drawing of Duofix with Opal Design II - not to scale



#### Note:

Topas with roof and Opal Design II/LED can only be fitted to the Duofix without the Valance Plus option.

**Note:** System must be the same size on both sides.

## **Cross-sections**

#### Sectional drawing of Duofix with Plaza Viva – not to scale



### Wall bracket







## Wall bracket coupling as multi-section unit



weinor 2021 | 05 Stand-alone awnings | Duofix

### Adjustment measurements



	Name	Maße in mm
Ø	Distance between centre lines A	B – 100
	Width C with screw-in base on both sides	A + 200
A/	Width D with foundation	A + 800
	Width E with slab base (if installed outside) (Not with multi-section units)	A + 1200
	70 x 70 mm post	3,000
	Square tube stabiliser 60 x 60 mm	1,500
	Universal rail	B – 1140



#### Mounting option: screw-in base

Here for an awning with length B = 5,000 mm (distance between centre lines A = B - 100)

## Screw-in base







## Screw-in base, coupling







#### **Foundation plans**





The foundations can be unreinforced from a static point of view. Additional reinforcement is purely constructive and not essential.

AVM-BGZ-R (A4) 125 M12 concrete anchors from Atrion are recommended to fix the screw-in base. Equivalent products from Fischer (type FAZ) or HILTI can also be used alternatively.





**Power supply lines** 







With the slab base, the leads can be inserted sideways into the slotted square tube post.

Screw-in bases have holes at the bottom (Ø 40 mm). Leads can be guided upwards through the foundation into the square tube post. The wall connection bracket has a drilled hole (ø 40 mm) above the crossbeam for electrical connection on site.

# **Duofix** Multi-section Units

## Multi-section units (max. 2 pieces, only on request)

#### Example Duofix multi-section unit with Opal Design II

Multi-section units are always supplied with screw-in bases. Two structurally identical products are always installed on one Duofix unit. The width of the individual units may vary.







## Patio roofs



Patio roof

## **Terrazza Pure**

**Terrazza Pure** is the perfect weather protection solution to bring as much light as possible to patios in Northern and Central European regions with less sun and more rain – and all in an elegant cubic design. The new cubic glass patio roof design is something really special: as the combination of its cubic shape and glass-covered roof is only offered by a few manufacturers on the market in a quality that doesn't come close to weinor's.



New rectangular shape for modern architecture provides head clearance heights with low wall bracket too





**Side roof supports:** Can be individually fitted with decorative strips



#### Innovative roof support design thanks to:

- Decorative strips in trend colours
- or the frame colour
- High-quality colour LED strip
- LED strips and decorative strips can be freely combined

#### Decorative strips in 5 trend colours



#### Attractive post design thanks to:

- Decorative strips in trend colours or the frame colour
- High-quality 400 colour LED strip below
- High-quality 1,600 colour LED strip above

## Terrazza Pure Highlights

#### Innovative glass support system:

Flush, proven to be stable, secure and watertight

Reliable drainage with linear look at the same time



**No angles:** Ideal for optional conversion with glazing elements



**New cabling concept:** Integrated electronics and easy to reach cable paths



**SUPER LITE side glazing:** Can be integrated extremely easily into roof supports



## Terrazza Pure Benefits



## Modern design in a class of its own

Terrazza Pure is one of the highest quality cubic patio roofs on the market with straight roof supports and fixed, supported glass supports for an integrated glass slope. The rectangular design harmonises perfectly with linear architecture, however old the building is.



#### Innovative glass support system

weinor developed the unique glass support system especially for Terrazza Pure. The supported glass support system forms a slope inside the horizontal roof support. This ensures the reliable drainage of water over the emergency drainage gutter and at the same time provides the cubic look.



#### Stable glass – resilient, shatter-proof and flooded with daylight

Terrazza Pure is designed for high-quality laminated safety glass (LSG):

- Roofing from 10 or 12 mm LSG
- Highly resilient, structurally tested
- Accessible to personnel for maintenance work from a thickness of 10 mm



## High-quality colour LED strips

A new lighting concept allows for the fitting of posts and roof supports with colour LED strips:400 mm long in lower post area

- 400 mm long in lower post area
- 1,600 mm long in upper post area
- On the underside of the roof support
- Integrated cabling ready to plug in



#### **Elegant decorative strips**

5 different anodised aluminium decorative strips (silver aluminium, copper aluminium, brown aluminium, brass aluminium and anthracite aluminium) can be integrated into posts and roof supports:

- Across the entire length of the posts' outsides
- On the underside of the centre roof support
- Sideways on the outer roof supports





# mounted without additional profiles Clever cabling concepts tailored to the products Sun protection – glare, privacy and

heat protection

the Glasoase<sup>®</sup>. The components are:The w17 easy full glass sliding door

weinor offers conservatory and vertical awnings to complement Terrazza Pure. They prevent patios and indoor rooms from heating up and protect against unpleasant glare and furniture and carpets fading. Vertical sun protection provides privacy protection on the sides. They are ideally tailored to Terrazza Pure and can also be retrofitted later on.

Modular system - really easy to expand

• Fixed glazing without frames, SUPER LITE side element

Terrazza Pure can be expanded by vertical glass elements to create

• The dimensions and shape of the guttering and the posts have been designed in such a way that glazing elements (GE) can be



## High-performance Tempura Quadra heating system

Tempura, the energy-efficient infrared heating system convinces with heat output of 1,500 watt in a tiny housing.

- Instant heat: no warm-up time
- Turn as required for targeted warmth
- Operate and dim using BiConnect radio control
- Splash protection
- Comes in 47 standard frame colours plus 9 trend colours in trend colours with a smart, textured look
- Optional: 150 special RAL colours
- Universal bracket makes it easy to retrofit
- TÜV tested



Under roof awning The Sottezza II under roof conservatory awning protects against dazzle and UV rays. Perfectly matched to the Terrazza Pure, it is ideally suited for well-ventilated rooms.



The over roof conservatory awning A roof-mounted conservatory awning from the WGM range is the ideal solution for side elements that are closed for the most part. It protects against overheating.



**Side awning** The weinor vertical sun protection systems VertiTex II offer reliable privacy, glare and sun protection.

## Technology overview

#### Terrazza Pure

Type A pent roof with integrated rain gutter



Technology	
Max. roof width	7,000 mm, single section roof, symmetrical roof panels
Min. – max. roof depth	1,600 mm – 4,000 mm
Glass slope (up to 2,599 mm roof depth)	3.2°
Glass slope (up to 4,000 mm roof depth)	2.1°
Guttering drainage	$\bigcirc$ covered
Snow load 750 N/m <sup>2</sup>	•
Snow loads up to 5,500 N/m <sup>2</sup>	0
Options	
Colour LED strips in roof supports	0
Colour LED strips in 400/1,600 mm posts	0
Decorative strips in the centre roof supports from below	0
Decorative strips in the side roof supports facing out	0
Decorative strips in the posts	0
Tension rod in the outer roof panels	0
Preparation for 230 V mains connection in the guttering and wall bracket	0
Accessories	
Underlay sun protection	0
Overlay sun protection	0
Vertical sun protection	0
Vertical glass elements	0
Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	0
Post	
115 post (square)	•
Guttering	
105 guttering	•

Depending on the design, differing distances between centre lines and the resultant additional roof panels can occur. Other individual shapes and maximum dimensions possible upon request.

standard O optional — unavailable

#### Details about weinor Terrazza Pure

#### Terrazza Pure scope of delivery

All the small parts required to install a Terrazza Pure roof are supplied as standard. Please also note any possible different or additional statements in the commercial or technical confirmation of the order.

#### Terrazza Pure Planning/Site Measuring

- Accurate site measuring is a basic requirement for the job to be carried out well. It is the foundation for the roof's production and to establish other construction requirements.
- weinor needs the roof dimension you want. Please make a note of obstacles like: protruding walls, rainwater downpipes, etc.
- Remember: the roof must be aligned straight.
- Carefully mark the cutting check and location of the special features you noted on site.
- Ideally, take digital photos of the installation site. Your technicians will be grateful for the more detailed information from good photos later on. The weinor staff can then get a better idea of what the site looks like and possibly provide you with non-binding details.
- Also measure the current situation on your building site. This makes it easier to talk about any necessary changes without measuring the site again.
- Unless otherwise specified, the glazing elements will be provided in the specified standard version.
- When designing the glazing elements and specifying glass thicknesses, the relevant statutory regulations must be observed at all times. weinor plans the glazing elements according to the lowest wind load (installation height: 0–8 m; dynamic pressure: 500 N/m<sup>2</sup>) and applies the specified standard glass thickness to the glazing elements. If different GE types are being used, this may result in deviations in the shape and/or colour of the various handles and glazing beads.
- The owner and customer are ultimately responsible for the statics design of the roof, glazing elements and accessories. In this context, the relevant valid statutory regulations must be observed, in particular Eurocode DIN EN 1990 and 1991, which define wind and snow loads.
- Powder coating: All weinor patio roof and glazing element surfaces are always supplied powder-coated. Caution, deviations in colour: the degree of sheen in the coating and different powder manufacturers may lead to deviations in colour occurring. The critical colours are RAL 9006 and RAL 9007 as well as all metallic (WT) colours.
- As a rule, production will not commence until after written approval of the order. Orders placed via the E-Shop are accepted without written approval and forwarded to Production immediately after the order confirmation

has been dispatched. No collateral agreements will be accepted as part of the contract.

• Changes to orders made after an order has been approved are only possible in certain instances depending on how far along the production stage has advanced and will therefore incur an additional charge.

#### Sun protection

- You can either provide sun protection for the Terrazza Pure roof using a WGM Top or undermounted Sottezza Il conservatory awning.
- The weinor VertiTex II can provide sun protection for the front and sides. This also provides glare and privacy protection.

#### Installation

- Check the structural conditions: foundation, floor panel, cutting check, masonry
- Check the drawing according to Engineering
- Preparatory work:
  - Check the roof and accessories scope of delivery with parts list/drawing from the confirmation of the order
  - Unpack the scope of delivery
  - Check it for damage
  - Start installation
  - The enclosed assembly instructions must be observed for assembly.

## Recommended installation material (not in scope of delivery)

- Approved fixings must be used to fix the roof to the wall and ground, which can bear the acting loads
- Fixings for glazing elements
- Glazing blocks, silicone, sealing glue, Kompri-Band, films, filler cord, insulation material, PU foam
- Weather protection angle bracket above the wall bracket
- Spacers for shimming glazing elements onto the floor

#### In case of complaints

If something appears to have not been carried out to your satisfaction:

- Take a photo of the package concerned (if possible, a digital photo).
- Make a detailed note of the causes, e.g. the actual dimensions of the supplied package. Our technicians can then compare the dimension with the target dimension to quickly establish the causes.
- Make a detailed note of the target dimension you would have expected. Our technicians can often draw important conclusions from this and give you more tips
- Please immediately contact the weinor office.



#### **Glass support system from weinor**

weinor developed the unique glass support system especially for Terrazza Pure. The supported glass support system forms a slope inside the straight roof support. This ensures the reliable drainage of water over the emergency drainage gutter and at the same time provides the cubic look.



The glass support profiles are continuously supported flush in a groove over the entire length of the roof support. This produces maximum resilience that can also be calculated structurally.



## Innovative glass support system

#### **Glass slope**

For the glass slope in a straight roof support the glass support profile is mounted with a fixed pitch depending on the roof pitch.







The glass support on the wall bracket varies due to the permanently fixed glass pitch. The glass is lower with a low roof depth. The glass is higher with a large roof depth. The bar for the glass support is predrilled and bolted to fit the wall bracket when the roof is mounted.



weinor 2021 | 06 Patio roofs | Terrazza Pure

## **Standard version**

#### Side roof support





The side roof supports are fitted with decorative strips in the system colour as standard.

#### Centre roof support





The centre roof supports are supplied without decorative strips or colour LED strips from below as standard and are designed as closed roof supports.

#### Posts

The Terrazza Pure posts are designed with a continuous post faceplate as standard.



Outside post



Centre post / wall



## Decorative strips

#### Side roof support





The side roof supports can be fitted with decorative strips on the outside as an option. Coloured decorative strips are always fitted in both side roof supports. Exception: there is a continuous wall on the side.

#### Centre roof support, underside





The centre roof supports can be fitted with decorative strips from underneath as an option. Coloured decorative strips can be chosen individually for each of the centre roof supports.

#### Posts

The posts can be fitted with coloured decorative strips outside in pairs as an option. Middle/wall posts cannot be designed with decorative strips.



Outside post

### Terrazza Pure – exclusive decorative strips



With the 5 decorative strips (silver aluminium, copper aluminium, brown aluminium, brass aluminium and anthracite aluminium) you can offer your customers a personalised solution. The anodised aluminium material gives your Terrazza Pure an elegant look.

The decorative strips can be integrated:

- Across the entire length of the posts' outsides
- On the underside of the centre roof support
- Sideways on the outer roof supports





Just one decorative colour can be chosen depending on the roof, it is not possible to combine colours

### **Colour LED strip lighting**

#### Centre roof support



The centre roof supports can be fitted with high-quality colour LED strips outside as an option. The colour decorative strips can be chosen individually for each of the centre roof supports. The length is based on the roof depth. Lighting is not possible in side roof supports.





BiRec RGB radio control with 48 V power supply pack integrated in wall bracket

#### Controls

The required electronics and controls are located in the wall bracket. They are installed using Plug&Play, the ready to plug in cabling is already fitted in the roof. It is only possible to control the colour LED strips using the weinor BiConnect and BiEasy 15M Go! hand transmitters.



Wall bracket with plenty of space for electronics and cabling with faceplate. Quick access to the electrical installation is possible at any time thanks to the removable faceplate.

## The BiConnect controls for colour LED strips are available in 2 versions.

Lighting in	Controls	Output	Circuit
Centre roof support	BiRec RGB 48 V with 48 V power supply pack	max. for 8 roof supports with lighting	all roof supports synchronous
400/1,600 post	BiRec RGB	max. 2 posts with lighting	both posts synchronous

All roof supports are controlled together (colour/brightness). Both posts are controlled together (colour/brightness).

BiEasy 15M Go! Hand transmitter

#### Note:

If the roof support/post lighting is operated at the same time using one dispatcher channel, this may lead to unsynchronised actions (power-on/colour adjustment/dimming) for technical reasons.

## Cabling concept

#### **LED** connector

For integrated color LED lighting, the cabling is integrated in the components – weatherproof, protected from sight and optimally prepared at the factory. This guarantees a pleasing appearance and a safe installation. Here are the details of the controls and connectors shown.

<b>Connection option</b>	Connection points	Version
LED in roof support	preassembled cable harness behind the WAP faceplate	plug connector pre-assembled at factory and routed in the profiles
LED in post	preassembled cable harness behind the WAP face- plate, through the side roof support into the post	plug connector pre-assembled at factory and routed in the profiles





A Cabling LED at the outer roof support



**B** Cabling LED at the middle roof support



C Wall connection with transformer and pre-assembled plug-in controls for LED color strips



D Cabling LED at the roof support and post

## **Cabling concept**

## Preparations for the mains connection of optional electricity consumers on the guttering and wall bracket

The power supply for optional electric components (e.g. a Tempura Quadra) is supplied on site using the E-Box in the in the guttering or on the wall bracket. The connecting lead is simply routed through the side roof support when mounting the roof.

Connection option	Connection points	Version
I. Preparation for mains connection 2	centre of guttering, one electricals box center of wall bracket, behind the WAP faceplate	Per connection a 3 x 1,5 mm <sup>2</sup> rubberline with Hirschmann coupling, cabling routing during roof installatione
II. Preparation for mains connection 4	guttering divided into three wall bracket divided into three	Per connection a 3 x 1,5 mm <sup>2</sup> rubberline with Hirschmann coupling, cabling routing during roof installation





**E** Main connection 230V either on the left or right (on the example on the right)



**H** Side roof support opend for easy cable laying up to the gutter



**F** Preparation for mains connection on wall bracket e.g. for Tempura Quadra



**G** Preparation for mains connection with E-box in the guttering e.g. for Tempura Quadra

## Terrazza Pure Planning

## **Cross-sections and dimensions**

#### Terrazza Pure (roof depth 1,600 mm to 2,599 mm)



#### Terrazza Pure (roof depth 2,600 mm to 4,000 mm)



### Terrazza Pure Planning

### **Cross-sections and dimensions**

#### **Roof support profiles**



Side roof support (left/right)



Centre roof support with decorative strip





Centre roof support with colour LED strip

## Terrazza Pure Planning

## **Cross-sections and dimensions**

#### Roof support profiles with optional 140 mm steel reinforcement bar



Side roof support (left/right)



Centre roof support with decorative strip



Standard centre roof support



Centre roof support with colour LED strip
## **Cross-sections and dimensions**

#### Guttering and wall bracket profiles



## **Cross-sections and dimensions**

#### Free-standing (standard)



S

Distance between centre lines for posts

Terrazza Pure width



N

57,5

## **Cross-sections and dimensions**

#### Lateral wall connection – continuous 5 mm or 100 mm (option)



The appearance and technology of the side roof support can change with a partial wall connection. Please ask for availability.

06

## Drainage and posts

#### Invisibly integrated downspout

Rainwater is discretely and systematically drained away through the integrated water drain. The downspout is invisibly integrated into one of the posts. The drain can also be fed through a post plate, if used.

#### Outside 115 post





115 centre/wall post

Overflow



Post corner water outlet



Variable height water outlet



Water outlet at front



Water outlet at bottom



## Variable post positions

#### Terrazza Pure with outside posts





The maximum spacing between the posts can be increased via steel inserts in the guttering. **Caution:** this may increase the weight of the rain gutter. As snow loads increase, the maximum post spacings reduce accordingly.

#### Terrazza Pure with indented posts



If the outer posts are indented, the centre post can be omitted for certain roof dimensions. Additional steel reinforcement bars in the guttering or the crossbeam also permit the number of posts and spacings to be changed.

Flexible reactions to structural situations that call for the variable positioning of the posts are also possible.

#### Maximal indent dimension of the posts



View from below

#### Posts on guttering



## Post fixation

#### Post plate to fix to the foundation





Post plate for 115 middle/wall post

Post plate for 115 outside post

#### Post plate cover caps and cover for attachment screws





#### Aluminium base









Aluminium base for 115 outside post (necessary from 3,000 mm)

## **Post fixation**

#### Aluminium plug-in unit profile

The optional plug-in unit profile for the outside post increases stability with post lengths longer than 2,600 mm.





#### **Post installation**



Post fixation on concrete floor slabs or foundations

Foundation plan

Bucket foundation

Screw foundation system





#### **Note:** The specified foundation sizes are guide values

and may differ depending on the quality of the ground on site.

06

## Frame widener under roof support



#### Up to wall connection profile



#### Up to house wall





#### Up to wall connection profile



#### Up to house wall





## Frame widener under side roof support

A frame widener is used under the side roof supports for the sideways installation of glazing elements or a VertiTex II so that the glazing elements can be positioned ideally. The frame widener under the roof support forms a harmonious unit in combination with glazing elements or the VertiTex II.

#### There are two versions here:

- 1. Ordered at the same time as the Terrazza Pure.
- 2. As retrofit version or with lateral wall connection

Frame widener 163 x 50 mm under roof support ordered with Terrazza Pure



Frame widener 115 x 50 mm under roof support ordered with Terrazza Pure



## Tension rod

#### **Roof tension rod**

A tension rod is necessary in the outer roof panels for sufficient stability with high wind loads. A tension rod can also be designed for all roof panels, on request, for example for visual reasons. The tension rod can also be mounted over the glazing.

#### Use of tension rod

Roof depth	Tension rod
up to 4,000 mm	not necessary
from 3,501 mm	necessary
from 3,001 mm	necessary
	Roof depth up to 4,000 mm from 3,501 mm from 3,001 mm





Roof support with ready-mounted tension rod



Tension rod is screwed on when roof is mounted



Invisible bolting thanks to cover



## **Vertical sun protection**

#### VertiTex II



The weinor VertiTex II vertical sun protection offers perfect privacy and glare protection. In a fabric from the screens by weinor<sup>®</sup> collection, it protects against wind and allows the outside to be seen from the inside (transparent from dark to bright). Available in the following versions:

- VertiTex II rope or guide rails
- VertiTex II Zip

#### VertiTex II details:

- One piece suitable for large widths up to 600 cm
- Standard installation bottom of bracket = bottom of gutter

#### VertiTex II Rail/Zip on Terrazza Pure



## Vertical sun protection

#### VertiTex II Rope on Terrazza Pure





Fabric width = VertiTex II width - 104 mm  $\pm$  6 mm manufacturing tolerance

Standard 38 x 20 x 32 mm rope holder on Terrazza 115 post





06

115 post with 38 x 20 x 32 mm rope holder (is used with the "outside rope guide" version) Caution: Only possible with rope guide next to the fabric



115 post with 38 x 20 x 20 mm rope holder (is used with the "indented rope" version)

## Vertical sun protection

#### VertiTex II 112 Rail/Zip





VertiTex II Rail/Zip multi-section unit in front



VertiTex II Rail/Zip all round



VertiTex II Rail/Zip in front with lateral wall Note: the guide rails end over the drain pipe as standard (note the PA dimensions)

## Vertical sun protection

#### VertiTex II 112 Rope





VertiTex II Rope multi-section unit in front



VertiTex II Rope all round



VertiTex II Rope in front with lateral wall Note: the rope guides end over the drain pipe as standard (note the PA dimensions)

## 06

#### weinor 2021 | 06 Patio roofs | Terrazza Pure

## **Underlay sun protection**

#### Sottezza II – undermounted glare protection



Sottezza II is the ideal undermounted sun protection for the weinor Terrazza Pure patio roof and for the Glasoase®, if there is enough air circulation. On sunny days, it offers pleasant dazzle and sun protection.

Sottezza II with up to 70 mm glazing elements on a free-standing Terrazza Pure1-panel unit2-panel unit or two 1-panel units



46 mm mounting plate for max. 70 mm wide GE



## Sottezza II with up to 90 mm glazing elements on a free-standing Terrazza Pure1-panel unit2-panel unit or two 1-panel units



66 mounting plate for max. 90 mm wide GE



## **Undermounted sun protection**

#### Side view of Terrazza Pure with Sottezza II



\* (with multi-section units 33.5)

The sun protection runs below the roof support. Sottezza II can be mounted very tight under the roof supports thanks to the colour LED strips integrated in the roof supports.

## Sottezza II installation under Terrazza Pure



Undermounted installation on a Terrazza Pure patio roof

The Sottezza II mounting bracket allows for fast and secure installation. The brackets grip flush to the underneath of the roof supports, plus no drilling or screwing into the roof supports is required anymore. Also ideal for retrofitting a Sottezza II.

Mounting of the Sottezza II in combination with Terrazza Pure with 0° pitch possible.

#### Sottezza II mounting plate indented 70 mm



46 mounting plate



46 mounting plate with base plate

#### Sottezza II mounting plate indented 90 mm





66 mounting plate

66 mounting plate with base plate

#### Sottezza II mounting plate for multi-section units, in centre



Mounting plate for multi-section units

06

## Surrounding shadowing

#### WGM Top – over roof heat protection



Over roof conservatory awnings from weinor protect the Terrazza patio roof or the Glasoase® from excessive heat build-up.

#### WGM Top on Terrazza Pure



#### WGM Top 0° installation on Terrazza Pure



## Surrounding shadowing

#### WGM Top guide rails overhang

#### Standard without overhang





#### Determining the projection of the conservatory awning

Terrazza Pure roof depth (mm)	1600	2000	2500	3000	3500	4000
WGM Top 3° pitch guide rails flush with guttering (standard)	1680	2080	2580	3080	3580	4080
WGM Top 0° pitch guide rails flush with guttering (standard)	1675	2075	2575	3075	3575	4075

**Note:** The installation of the WGM Top is recommended with a minimum pitch of 3°. A flat installation at 0° increases the chance of dirt gathering on the front fabric edge. Please always take into account the risk of a rapid formation of "pooling" when left out in rain with the OptiStretch version.

#### Minimum height of WGM Top over Terrazza Pure

Terrazza Pure roof depth (mm)	1600	2000	2500	3000	3500	4000
WGM Top 3° pitch – box height (HK)	300	330	350	370	390	400

## WGM Top installation on Terrazza Pure





#### WGM Top mounting plate

A support bracket preparation is optionally available for conservatory awnings – perfectly matched, as from one system.

WGM Top mounting plate



## w50-c fixed glazing and SUPER LITE for Terrazza Pure

#### Terrazza Pure with w50-c SUPER LITE



Side roof support with SUPER LITE with 35 mm frame Side roof support with SUPER LITE with 105 mm frame









06

## w50-c SUPER LITE fixed glazing

Side roof support with 163 x 50 mm frame widener (standard) and w50-c SUPER LITE 35 fixed glazing





Side roof support with 163 x 50 mm frame widener (standard) and w50-c SUPER LITE 105 fixed glazing



The appearance and technology of the side roof support can change with a partial wall connection. Please ask for availability

## w50-c SUPER LITE fixed glazing

Side roof support with 115 x 50 mm frame widener (for retrofitting) and w50-c SUPER LITE 35 fixed glazing





Side roof support with 115 x 50 mm frame widener (for retrofitting) and w50-c SUPER LITE 105 fixed glazing



06

The appearance and technology of the side roof support can change with a partial wall connection. Please ask for availability





## w17 easy

#### 2 to 4-track on one side





115

Terrazza Pure width

06

## w17 easy

#### 2 to 4-track on one side, 3-track at the front





## w17 easy









## w17 easy

#### 2 to 5-track at the front



## w17 easy

## 2 to 4-track on one side, 163 x 50 mm frame widener under roof support (standard)





## 2 to 4-track on one side, 115 x 50 mm frame widener under roof support (retrofitting)



The appearance and technology of the side roof support can change with a partial wall connection. Please ask for availability

## w17 easy

## At the front between posts, 2 to 5-track



At the front behind posts, 2 to 5-track





Patio roof

# Terrazza Sempra Terrazza Sempra Plus

The new weinor **Terrazza Sempra** patio roof is based on the long-standing Terrazza Originale. It appeals to end customers who don't prefer the Terrazza Originale's classically round design or do not want the Terrazza Pure's consistently cubic look. Terrazza Sempra therefore completes the weinor Terrazza range with its combination of roof pitch and angular design. 06



**Privacy and sun protection:** vertical and conservatory awnings (VertiTex II, Sottezza II and WGM Top) can be easily added to.



#### Under mounted awning

The Sottezza II Under mounted conservatory awning protects against dazzle and UV rays. Perfectly matched to the Terrazza Sempra, it is ideally suited for well-ventilated rooms.



#### Over roof awning

A roof-mounted conservatory awning from the WGM range is the ideal solution for side elements that are closed for the most part. It reduces the greenhouse effect.



#### Side awning

The weinor VertiTex II vertical sun protection offers reliable privacy, glare and sun protection. Fitted with a fabric from the screens by weinor<sup>®</sup> collection, it improves air circulation.

#### Two roof versions:



Terrazza Sempra

without roof overhang



**Terrazza Sempra Plus** with roof overhang

**Highest quality profile:** all weinor profiles are always cut to size before powder coating. This ensures optimum corrosion resistance.

#### NEW! Square guttering look: 220 guttering with square end completes the uniform overall appearance



Large widths: light 220 guttering with less steel, patio roof widths up to 7 metres, without a centre post



Square 115 post: easy downpipe installation and maintenance due to opening function, water outlet can be individually adjusted in height

# Terrazza sempra/Plus Highlights

**NEW!** Square roof support look: due to the new shape of the cover cap and glazing strip, the stable roof support has a square look.



Proven roof supports (types L and S): guarantee the well-known high stability due to their T-beam shape.

weinor Glasoase<sup>®</sup>: extended all-round weather protection with full-surface glazing elements



06

NEW! LED Design square light bar: warm white LED spotlights with proven electronics, new square shape bar

#### RGB LED light strip:

with 48 colours and 3 shades of white, can be flexibly mounted on site



# Terrazza sempra/Plus Benefits





The Terrazza Sempra impresses with its timeless square design combined with a sloping glass roof. The professional weinor engineering allows for a high-quality look, in the detail too.

- No mounting grooves
- No silicone
- Virtually no visible fixings







115 post



Roof supports with proven certified statics and high stability, which are supplemented by new square caps.

- No thermal separation
- Extra thick extruded profile walls
- Thanks to powder coated aluminium profiles and stainless steel screws
- Snow load up to 550 kg/m<sup>2</sup>
- Roof depths of up to 6,000 mm

### Rigid roof covering - resilient and shatter-proof

The weinor Terrazza Sempra is rated for high-quality laminated safety glass (LSG):

- Roofing from 10 or 12 mm LSG
- Highly resilient, structurally tested
- Accessible to personnel for maintenance work from a thickness of 10 mm
- 16 mm polycarbonate available as an option (rain noise!)

## Invisibly integrated downpipe

Rainwater is systematically drained away by the downpipe discretely integrated into the post. The opening function makes it easier to install and maintain the downpipe. Upon request, the drain can also be fed through a post plate. The optional leaf guard prevents the ingress of leaves and the like into the rain gutter.



## **Better statics – larger widths**

The guttering can take high loads due to its overall height of 220 mm. Depending on the depth and snow load, wider spans can be managed between the posts without reinforcing the guttering with steel. As a result, larger widths are possible without any middle posts. The glazing elements can be fitted behind gutter 220 on request. This way the maximum head clearance height can be achieved. **Innovative:** The additional **steel reinforcement can be delivered separately** and is simply inserted into the gutter on site! This massively reduces the weight during transport.

## Terrazza Sempra/Plus Benefits – expandable system

#### NEW!



New: LED Design square light bar



RGB LED light bar

#### LED lighting – for an impressive atmosphere New: LED Design square light bar

- In round and now in square
- Extremely energy-efficient and long-lasting spotlights
- Infinitely dimmable when used with BiConnect radio control
- Easy to retrofit

#### **RGB LED light strip**

- 48 colours and 3 whites
- Convenient operation using the BiEasy 15M Go! hand transmitter.
- Can be mounted all around the gutter, glazing elements or house wall



### **High-performance Tempura Quadra heating** system

Tempura and Tempura Quadra, the energy-efficient infrared heating systems, impress with a heat output of 1,500 watt in a tiny housing.

- Instant heat: no warm-up time
- Turn as required for targeted warmth
- Operate and dim using BiConnect radio control
- Splash protection
- Available in 47 standard frame colours plus 9 scratch-proof, resistant trend colours with a smart, textured look
- Option: 150 special RAL colours
- Easy to retrofit using universal bracket
- TÜV tested





#### Modular system – very easy tp expand

Terrazza Sempra can be easily expanded by glass elements to create the Glasoase<sup>®</sup>. The components are:

• The w17 easy full glass sliding door

• LITE w50-c trapezium glazing on the side

The dimensions and shape of the 220 guttering and the 115 posts have been designed in such a way that glazing elements (GE) can be mounted safely without additional profiles.

### Sun protection – glare and heat protection with privacy and visual benefits

Sun protection systems from weinor meet many requirements: They prevent unpleasant glare and fading of furniture and carpets. They provide privacy protection on the sides. And they avoid overheating when the vertical elements are closed.

- Perfectly matched to the Terrazza Sempra patio roof
- Can be retrofitted afterwards
- Choice of 150 fabric designs

# Terrazza sempra/Plus Technology

Terrazza roof system versions	Terrazza Sempra	Terrazza Sempra Plus		
	Pent roof with integrated rain gutter	Pent roof with integrated rain gutter and roof overhang		
Technology				
Max. roof width	7,000 mm	7,000 mm		
Max. roof depth (roof support S/L)	3,000 mm/6,000 mm	3,500 mm/6,000 mm		
Roof pitch in Quick & Easy (3°* to 15°) Caution: < 5° the roof's impermeability is at risk	•	•		
Roof pitch (5° to 15°)	•	•		
Roof pitch (> 15° to 45°)	0	—		
Guttering drainage	○ Covered or outside	○ Covered or outside		
Snow load 750 N/m <sup>2</sup>	•	•		
Snow loads up to 5,500 N/m <sup>2</sup>	0	0		
Accessories				
Under mounted sun protection	0	0		
Over roof sun protection	0	0		
Vertical sun protection	0	0		
Vertical glass elements	0	0		
Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	0	0		
LED light bar	0	0		
Permanent roof vents	0	0		
Terrazza system posts				
115 post (square)	•	•		
Terrazza system guttering				
220 guttering (only possible with the 115 post)	•	•		

● standard ○ optional — unavailable

#### \* With roof pitches < 5°:

- With large roof depths and the use of glass staves, there are restrictions with impermeability, if applicable, additional sealing measures are required here.
- Larger deposits form faster in front of glass staves (moss, biofilm etc.).
- With the use of trapezium fillings on the side the glass area becomes very narrow and therefore neither visually attractive nor very easy to install.
- Using air vents may lead to water getting in (rain due to wind etc.).
- Water is not drained and water pooling in front of the staves may lead to
- ice on the roof in cold temperatures.



## Terrazza Sempra/Plus Technology

## **General notes**

#### Terrazza Sempra/Plus scope of delivery

All the small parts required to install a Terrazza Sempra/ Plus roof are supplied as standard. Please also note any possible different or additional statements in the commercial or technical confirmation of the order.

#### Terrazza Sempra/Plus: Site dimension and planning

- A full and accurate site survey is a basic requirement for the job to be carried out well. It is the foundation for the roof's production and to establish other construction requirements.
- weinor needs the roof dimension you want. Please make a note of obstacles like: protruding walls, rain down-pipes, etc.
- Remember: The roof must be aligned straight.
- Permanently mark the cutting check and location of the special features you noted on site.
- Ideally, take digital photos of the installation site. Your technicians will be grateful for the more detailed information from good photos later on. The weinor staff can then get a better idea of what the site looks like and possibly provide you with non-binding details.
- Also measure the current situation on your building site. This makes it easier to talk about any necessary changes without measuring the site again.
- Unless otherwise specified, the glazing elements will be provided in the specified standard version.
- When designing the glazing elements and specifying glass thickness, the relevant statutory regulations must be observed at all times. weinor plans the glazing elements according to the lowest wind load (installation height: 0–8 m; dynamic pressure: 500 N/m<sup>2</sup>) and applies the specified standard glass thickness to the glazing elements. If different GE types are being used, this may result in deviations in the shape and/or colour of the various handles and glazing beads.
- The owner and customer are ultimately responsible for the statics design of the roof, glazing elements and accessories. In this context, the relevant valid statutory regulations must be observed, in particular Eurocode DIN EN 1990 and 1991, which defines wind and snow loads.
- Powder coating: all weinor patio roof and glazing element surfaces are always supplied powder-coated. Caution, deviations in colour: the degree of sheen in the coating and different powder manufacturers may lead to deviations in colour. The critical colours are RAL 9006 and RAL 9007 as well as all metallic (WT) colours.

- As a rule, production will not commence until after written approval of the order. Orders placed via the E-Shop are accepted without written approval and forwarded to Production immediately after the order confirmation has been dispatched. No collateral agreements will be accepted as part of the contract.
- Changes to orders made after an order has been approved are only possible in certain instances depending on how far along the production stage has advanced and will therefore incur an additional charge.

#### Sun protection

- You can either provide sun protection for the Terrazza Sempra/Plus roof using a WGM Top or undermounted Sottezza II conservatory awning.
- The weinor VertiTex II can provide sun protection for the front. This also provides glare and privacy protection.

#### Installation

- Check the structural conditions: foundation, floor panel, cutting check, masonry
- Check the drawing according to Engineering
- Preparatory work:
  - Check the roof and accessories scope of delivery with parts list/drawing from the confirmation of the order
  - Unpack the scope of delivery
  - Check it for damage
  - Start installation
  - Instructions are available for installation.

## Recommended installation material (not in scope of delivery)

- Fixings for mounting the roof to the wall and floor
- Fixings for glazing elements
- Glazing blocks, silicone, sealing glue, Kompri-Band, films, filler cord, insulation material, PU foam, glazing tape
- Weather protection angle bracket above the wall profile
- Spacers for shimming glazing elements onto the floor

#### In case of complaints

If something appears to have not been carried out to your satisfaction:

- Take a photo of the package concerned and the whole installation situation (if possible, several digital photos).
- Make a detailed note of the causes, e.g. the actual dimensions of the supplied package. Our technicians can then compare the dimension with the target dimension to quickly establish the causes.
- Make a detailed note of the target dimension you would have expected. Our technicians can often draw important conclusions from this and give you more tips.
- Please immediately contact the weinor office.
# Terrazza sempra/Plus Planning

## **Roof types and combination options**

Terrazza			Sempra	Sempra Plus
		220		
		Guttering	115 post	115 post
	Pent roof type A Depending on the design, differing distances between centre lines and the resultant additional roof panels can occur.	220	•	0
A	Pent roof type A with wall offset Depending on the design, differing distances between centre lines and the resultant additional roof panels can occur.	220	0	0
R	Pent roof type A with balcony recess Depending on the design, differing distances between centre lines and the resultant additional roof panels can occur.	220	0	0
R	Pent roof type A with guttering offset Depending on the design, differing distances between centre lines and the resultant additional roof panels can occur.	220	0	$\diamond$
	Pent roof type A tapered wall profile left/right Pent roof with tapered wall profile or partially tapered wall profile	220	0	0
	Pent roof type C Pent roof with tapered side roof supports, width of outer roof panel max. 1,000 mm, roof depth max. 4,500 mm	220	$\diamond$	$\diamond$
	Pitched roof type L Pitched roof, width max. 6,500 mm, roof depth max. 6,500 mm (observe minimum roof pitch of 5° – 30°)	220	$\diamond$	$\diamond$

• standard  $\bigcirc$  optional  $\diamondsuit$  upon request — unavailable

## Terrazza Sempra Planning

### **Cross-sections and dimensions**

#### 220 guttering – S roof support (max. roof depth 3,000 mm)



S roof support

sheet 16 mm

#### Note:











## Terrazza Sempra Planning

### **Cross-sections and dimensions**

#### 220 guttering - L roof support (max. roof depth 6,000 mm)





L roof support

Roof pitch to	5°	10°	15°	20°	25°	30°	35°	40°	45°
Roof type S wall profile height in mm	152	153	156	159	164	171	180	192	208
Roof type L wall profile height in mm	192	194	197	202	208	217	229	245	264
Htd in mm	221	223	224	226	228	230	232	235	238







\* Order dimension

- Htd Trapezium height on the guttering
- **Hw** Wall profile height
- **OKFF** Top of floor
- **UKd** Bottom edge of guttering
- UKw Bottom edge of wall profile
- OKw Top edge of wall profile

435

## Terrazza Sempra Plus Planning

### **Cross-sections and dimensions**

#### 220 guttering - S roof support (max. roof depth 3,500 mm)





S roof support

#### Note:











## Terrazza Sempra Plus Planning

### **Cross-sections and dimensions**









Roof pitch to	5°	10°	15°
Roof type S wall profile height in mm	152	153	156
Roof type L wall profile height in mm	192	194	197
Htd in mm	221	223	224



Roof type L outer roof beam



\* Order dimension
Htd Trapezium height on the guttering
Hw Wall profile height
OKFF Top of floor
UKd Bottom edge of guttering
UKw Bottom edge of wall profile
OKw Top edge of wall profile

## Terrazza Sempra Planning

## **Cross-sections and dimensions**



#### Determining the distance between bottom edge of guttering to bottom edge of wall profile

Roof depth T (mm)	1000	1250	1500	1750	2000	2250	2500	2750	3000	3250	3500	3750	4000	4250	4500	4750	5000	5250	5500	5750	6000
115 post (220 gutt	ering)																				
Roof pitch 5°	287	308	330	353	374	396	418	440	462	483	505	527	549	571	593	615	637	658	680	702	724
Roof pitch 15°	465	532	599	666	733	800	867	934	1001	1068	1135	1202	1269	1336	1403	1470	1537	1604	1671	1738	1805

Distance D (between UKw and UKd)





## Terrazza Sempra Plus Planning

### **Cross-sections and dimensions**



#### Determining the distance between bottom edge of guttering to bottom edge of wall profile

Roof depth T (mm)	1000	1250	1500	1750	2000	2250	2500	2750	3000	3250	3500	3750	4000	4250	4500	4750	5000	5250	5500	5750	6000
115 post (220 guttering)																					
Roof pitch 5°	287	308	330	353	374	396	418	440	462	483	505	527	549	571	593	615	637	658	680	702	724
Roof pitch 15°	465	532	599	666	733	800	867	934	1001	1068	1135	1202	1269	1336	1403	1470	1537	1604	1671	1738	1805

Distance D (between UKw and UKd)





### Terrazza Sempra/Plus Planning

### **Guttering steel reinforcement bar**





Without steel reinforcement bar

1 x 140 steel reinforcement bar



1 x 180 steel reinforcement bar

Guttering weight – 220 guttering	excluding steel	1 x 140 steel	
kg/m (without side cover caps)	6.5	17.5	19.5

The maximum spans depend on the roof depth and required snow load. You can find the details about this in the current weinor Terrazza price list.





#### Special feature: and only from weinor! The steel reinforcement bar

and roof gutter profile can be ordered separately. Thanks to the removable back of the 220 guttering, the 140 and 180 mm steel reinforcement bar can be inserted into the gutter from the back afterwards. This significantly reduces the weight for transport and installation.

Weight (kg/m)	220 guttering	140 steel	180 steel
Individual weight	6.5	11.0	13.0

## Terrazza Sempra/Plus Planning

## **Roof support steel reinforcement**



Roof type L outer roof beam with steel insert



Roof type S outer roof beam with steel insert

Roof type L std roof beam with steel insert



Roof type S std roof beam with steel insert

#### 06

## Guttering protective leaf gaurd



220 guttering protective leaf gaurd

## Terrazza sempra/Plus POSts

### Drainage and posts

#### Invisibly integrated downpipe

Rainwater is discretely and systematically drained away through the integrated water drain. The downpipe is invisibly integrated into the post. Due to the clip-on post faceplate the downpipe can be reached at any time for maintenance purposes. The drain can also be purposefully fed through a post plate, if used.



#### Outside 115 post





115 centre/wall post





Post corner water outlet

Sideways guttering drain (optional)

powder-coated in same colour as roof)

Drain on the side of the 220 guttering incl. cover plate and screw sockets (made of aluminium and

Variable height water outlet



Water outlet at front



Water outlet at bottom





## Variable post positions

#### Terrazza Sempra with outside posts





The maximum spacing between the posts can be increased via steel inserts in the guttering. **Important!** Caution: this may increase the weight of the rain gutter. As snow loads increase, the maximum post spacings reduce accordingly.

#### Terrazza Sempra with indented posts



#### Maximal indent dimension of the posts

View from below Width Rear Indented posts max. 1000 Min. 70% roof width max. 1000 Min. 70% roof width Max. 20% Only 1 post indented Max. 20%

The maximum spacing between the posts can be increased by steel inserts in the guttering. Caution, this can increase the weight of the rain gutter. As snow loads increase, the maximum post spacings reduce accordingly.

If the outer posts are indented, the centre post can be omitted for certain roof dimensions. Additional steel reinforcement bars in the guttering or the transom also permit the number of posts and spacings to be changed.

Flexible reactions to structural situations that call for the variable positioning of the posts are also possible.

#### Posts on guttering



## Terrazza Sempra/Plus Posts

## Post plates

#### Post plate for fixing to the foundation



#### Cover cap on post plate for fixing to the foundation and for covering the attachment screws







## Aluminium base

Aluminium base for fixing to the foundation – small aluminium base







115 post

#### Terrazza Sempra/Plus Posts

## **Post fixation**

#### Aluminium post reinforcement profile

The optional extruded insert for the outside posts increases stability for post lengths longer than 2600mm, or situations where you feel it may be necessary.





#### **Post installation**



Post fixation on concrete floor slabs or foundations

#### **Foundation plan**



**Note:** The specified foundation sizes are guide values and may differ depending on the quality of the ground on site.

## Terrazza sempra/Plus Transoms



Transoms in the roof area





Transom detail

From a pane length of 3,000 mm, it is advisable to split the roof glazing by means of a rigid transom.

The transom in the roof also stiffens the construction, hence improving its structural stability. This is relevant, for example, when using vertical all-glass elements, such as glass doors or side parts.



Roof support with ready-mounted transom

## Terrazza sempra/Plus Roof vents



A clever solution: the two offset glass panels of the WeiTop DL permanent roof vent ensure permanent ventilation and hence an agreeable climate.

#### The benefits

- Transparent all-glass solution for an elegant look
- Always powder-coated in roof colour
- Pre-equipped for the specified roof covering thickness (10, 12 and 16 mm)
- Optional insect screen or winter faceplate for manual assembly





## **Vertical sun protection**

#### VertiTex II



The weinor VertiTex II vertical sun protection offers perfect visual and anti-glare protection. In a fabric from the screens by weinor<sup>®</sup> collection, it protects against wind and allows the outside to be seen from the inside (transparent from dark to bright). The following versions are available:

- VertiTex II rope or guide rails
- VertiTex II Zip

#### VertiTex II details:

- One piece suitable for large widths up to 600 cm
- Standard installation bottom of bracket = bottom of gutter



220 guttering with side top lateral locking bar

220 guttering with side bottom lateral locking bar

## Vertical sun protection

VertiTex II Rope/Rail/Zip 75/92/112 on Terrazza Sempra with 220 guttering and 115 post



220 guttering with side top lateral locking bar



220 guttering with side bottom lateral locking bar

## Vertical sun protection

#### VertiTex II rope on Terrazza Sempra



Fabric width = VertiTex II width - 80 mm ± 6 mm permissible tolerance

14 x 35 x 16 mm rope holder on Terrazza Sempra 115 post







115 post with 14 x 35 x 16 mm rope holder (is used with the "indented rope" version)



115 post with 20 x 38 x 28 mm rope holder (is used with the "outside rope guide" version) **Caution:** Only possible with rope guide next to the fabric, e.g. in the centre with multi-section units

Additional information can be found in the VertiTex II vertical sun protection system chapter.



## Vertical sun protection

#### VertiTex II Rail/Zip with 220 guttering and 115 post





VertiTex II Rail/Zip all round, multi-section unit in front



VertiTex II Rail/Zip all round



VertiTex II Rail/Zip in front with lateral wall Note: the guide rails end over the drain pipe as standard (note the PA dimensions)

## Vertical sun protection

#### VertiTex II Rope with 220 guttering and 115 post



VertiTex II Rope all round, multi-section unit in front



VertiTex II Rope all round

VertiTex II Rope in front with lateral wall Note: the guide rails end over the drain pipe as standard (note the PA dimensions)

## Vertical sun protection with glazing elements

#### VertiTex II lateral with w17 easy 2-track

VertiTex II lateral with w17 easy 3-track





## Vertical sun protection with glazing elements



#### VertiTex II lateral with w17 easy 5-track

30

30

Terrazza Sempra/Plus depth

GE width

20

w17 easy 2-track

w17 easy 3-track

w17 easy 4-track

w17 easy 5-track

w17 easy 5-trac

70x70 rectangular profile

### **Over roof sun protection**

WGM Top – over roof sun protection



Over roof conservatory awnings from weinor protect the Terrazza Sempra patio roof or the Glasoase® from excessive heat build-up.

#### WGM Top on Terrazza Sempra



## Installation on weinor Terrazza Sempra



Installation on a Terrazza Sempra patio roof

#### Support bracket mounting plate



For weinor Terrazza Sempra L 150 roof support

## a fr

For weinor Terrazza Sempra S 110 roof support

#### Adaptor plates

A support bracket preparation is optionally available for conservatory awnings – perfectly matched, as from one system.

## Over roof sun protection

#### WGM Top standard without overhang



#### WGM Top with overhang



#### Determining the projection of the conservatory awning

Terrazza Sempra depth (mm)	1000	1500	2000	2500	3000	3500	4000	4500	5000	5500	6000
Roof pitch 5°	1108	1610	2112	2614	3116	3618	4120	4621	5123	5625	6127
Roof pitch 15°	1134	1652	2170	2687	3205	3723	4240	4758	5275	5793	6311

## Under mounted sun protection

Sottezza II – undermounted glare protection



The Sottezza II is the ideal undermounted sun protection for the weinor Terrazza Sempra/Plus patio roof and for the Glasoase<sup>®</sup>. On sunny days, it offers pleasant dazzle and sun protection.

#### Sottezza II with glazing elements on a free-standing Terrazza Sempra





Our recommendation and also ideal for retrofitting:

- Sottezza II indented 50 mm on each side
- Standard for orders via Quick & Easy

Sottezza II

#### Sottezza II without glazing elements on a free-standing Terrazza Sempra





Sottezza II flush outside on the roof support

## Under mounted sun protection

#### Side view of the Sottezza II



The sun protection runs below the roof support. Combined with LED light bars or LED Design, the Sottezza II must be mounted using suitable spacers at a spacing of 30 mm to the roof supports.

#### Determining the projection of the Sottezza II

Terrazza Sempra depth (mm)	1000	1500	2000	2500	3000	3500	4000	4500	5000	5500	6000
Roof pitch 5°	940	1442	1944	2445	2947	3449	3951	4453	4955	5457	5959
Roof pitch 15°	959	1476	1994	2512	3029	3547	4064	4582	5100	5617	6135

#### Standard mounting of Sottezza II under Terrazza Sempra



Headplate bracket



Side channel bracket

You will receive two headplate brackets as standard for installation on the patio roof. This is mounted to the cassette.

The standard number of side channel brackets can be found in the valid price list.

## Terrazza sempra/Plus Glasoase®

### **Glazing elements**



The weinor Glasoase<sup>®</sup> elegant cold conservatory system comprises a Terrazza Sempra patio roof and flexible or fixed, all-glass elements. All system components are available from weinor. This creates a host of combination options. The most diverse glazing elements offer protection where it is required, and allow the Glasoase<sup>®</sup> to be opened whenever desired.

#### SUPER LITE w50-c side element

- Maximum transparency
- Adds fixed glazing to the Glasoase<sup>®</sup> design
- Very attractively priced
- All-glass fixed glazing under the side Terrazza Sempra roof support



#### LITE w50-c side element

- Highly transparent
- Attractively priced
- Fixed glazing under the lateral Terrazza Sempra patio roof rack (trapezoid),

can be combined with w17 easy



#### CLASSIC w50-c side element

- Extremely robust and stable
- Load-bearing
- Very good value for money
- Fixed glazing below the Terrazza Sempra side patio roof support (trapezoid with vertical staves), can be combined with w17 easy

#### weinor all-glass walls

Alongside an all-round view, weinor all-glass walls provide reliable protection against the wind and driving rain. Available as fixed or sliding models depending on your preferences and needs. All systems are basically suitable for patio roofs, loggias and balconies.



#### Full glass sliding door w17 easy

- Opens sideways
- Actuator for easy closing
- Requires several guide rails
- Standing construction

#### Terrazza Sempra/Plus Glasoase®

## weinor Glasoase<sup>®</sup> Benefits

Frameless all-glass elements allow the weinor patio roof to be expanded into the Glasoase<sup>®</sup>. This creates transparent weather protection with an unspoiled panoramic view to prolong the patio season. All weinor system components fit together perfectly and can be retro-fitted.



#### Flexible, vertical all-glass elements

Enable partial or complete opening of the Glasoase<sup>®</sup>, depending on the version, to suit individual requirements



#### **Fixed glazing**

For complete sides or lateral trapezium glazing, can be combined with flexible all-glass elements



#### Suitable sun protection

Glare, heat and privacy protection with sun protection solutions upon request



#### **Expandable system**

can be retro-fitted by further accessories even after many years, thanks to the modular range:

- Patio lighting
- Tempura
- Roof vent
- BiConnect remote control
- Roof or vertical sun protection

## w50-c side element SUPER LITE and w17 easy



## Terrazza Sempra/Plus Glasoase®

## w17 easy

#### At the front between posts, 2-5-track



## Terrazza Sempra/Plus Glasoase®

## 220 guttering with w17 easy

At the front between posts, 2 to 5-track

At the front behind posts, 2 to 5-track







Patio roof

## **Terrazza Originale** Terrazza Originale Plus

High-quality: The weinor **Terrazza Originale** and **Terrazza Originale Plus** patio roofs convince with their elegant construction, shapely design and high resilience. The modular system can be expanded by vertical glass elements to create the transparent Glasoase<sup>®</sup>. Other features include sun protection, light and heating. The numerous versions make it suitable for the most diverse types of building and requirements.



160 guttering

Choose between 2 posts:



**Rigid roof covering:** Made from 10 mm or 12 mm safety glass – optional possible with 16 mm plastic



## Terrazza originale/Plus Highlights



**Elegant design:** A seamless look



**Rigid aluminium construction:** Tested safety all round

**Two roof types:** Many versions





Straightforward, functional design: Posts with integrated, easily accessible water drainage 06

#### Expandable system:

Can be retrofitted afterwards with

- Patio lighting
- Tempura
- Sun protection systems
- BiConnect remote control
- Air-conditioning system



Can be expanded by vertical glass elements into the weinor Glasoase<sup>®</sup>, the transparent weather protection. We recommend the 115 post for perfect installation.

## Terrazza originale/Plus Benefits



#### Elegant design – a seamless look

The weinor Terrazza patio roof captivates through its harmonious design. The elegant yet rigid construction is thought out down to the finest detail:

- No mounting grooves
- No silicone
- Almost no visible screws





The resilient construction is based on structural computations by a certified engineering consultancy.

- No thermal separation
- Highest quality aluminium extrusion thick profile walls
- Corrosion-proof thanks to aluminium profiles and stainless steel screws
- Snow load of up to 550 kg/m<sup>2</sup>
- Roof depths of up to 6,000 mm



## Rigid roof covering – resilient and shatter-proof

The weinor Terrazza is rated for high-quality laminated safety glass (LSG):

- Glass specification either 10 or 12 mm LSG
- Highly resilient, structurally tested
- Accessible to personnel for maintenance work from a thickness of 10 mm
- 16 mm polycarbonate available as an option (rain noise!)



115 post

90 post

## Invisibly integrated downspout

Rainwater is systematically drained away by the downspout discretely integrated into the post. Upon request, the drain can also be fed through a post plate. The optional greenery filter prevents the ingress of leaves and the like into the rain gutter. The Terrazza posts are available selectively as 115 posts (square) or 90 posts (round) to match the style of architecture and home.



DR 160

## Better statics – larger widths

The guttering is considerably more durable thanks to the new extra headroom of 220 mm compared to 160 mm. Depending on the depth and snow load, up to 20% wider spans can be managed between the posts without reinforcing the guttering with steel. As a result, larger widths are possible without any middle posts. The glazing elements can be fitted behind gutter 220 on request. This way the maximum head clearance height can be achieved.


Wall mounting

Roof assembly

# LED/Design strip light– use of patio into the evening (option)

Strip lights enable the patio roof to be used for longer periods.

- Atmospheric light thanks to special glass lenses
- Highly energy-efficient
- Operating life of 30,000 hours
- Infinitely dimmable when used with BiConnect radio control
- Easy to service: simple replacement of individual LED lights
- Housing in the patio roof colour
- Including connection lead and lead rail
- Easy to retrofit
- Individual length up to 6,500 mm



# High-performance Tempura heating system (optional)

Tempura and Tempura Quadra, the energy-efficient infrared heating systems, impress with a heat output of 1,500 watt in a tiny housing.

- Instant heat: no warm-up time
- Turn as required for targeted warmth
- Operate and dim using BiConnect radio control
- Splash protection
- Comes in 47 standard frame colours plus 9 scratch-proof, resistant trend colours with a smart, textured look
- Optional: 150 special RAL colours
- Universal bracket makes it easy to retrofit
- TÜV tested



## Sun protection – glare, privacy and heat protection

Sun protection systems from weinor satisfy a host of requirements: they prevent unpleasant dazzle effects and the fading of furniture and carpets. They ensure sideways visual and dazzle protection. And they prevent overheat effects with closed vertical elements.

- Perfectly matched to the Terrazza patio roof
- Can be retrofitted afterwards
- Choice of 150 fabric designs



Under roof awning The Sottezza II under roof conservatory awning protects against dazzle and UV rays. Perfectly matched to the Terrazza, it is ideally suited for well-ventilated rooms.



The over roof awning A roof-mounted conservatory awning from the WGM range is the ideal solution for side elements that are closed for the most part. It reduces the greenhouse effect.



**Front/side sun protection** The weinor VertiTex vertical sun protection system offers reliable privacy, glare and sun protection. Fitted with a fabric from the screens by weinor<sup>®</sup> collection, it improves air circulation.

# Terrazza originale/Plus Technology

Terrazza roof system versions	Terrazza Originale	Terrazza Originale Plus
	Pent roof with integrated rain gutter	Pent roof with integrated rain gutter and roof overhang
Technology		
Max. roof width	all widths possible, depending on num	ber of posts
Max. roof depth (roof support S/L)	3,000 mm/6,000 mm	3,500 mm/6,000 mm
Roof pitch in Quick & Easy (3°* to 15°) Caution: < 5° the roof's impermeability is at risk	•	•
Roof pitch (5° to 15°)	•	•
Roof pitch (> 15° to 45°)	0	—
Guttering drainage	$\bigcirc$ covered or outside	$\bigcirc$ covered or outside
Snow load 750 N/m <sup>2</sup>	•	•
Snow loads up to 5,500 N/m <sup>2</sup>	0	0
Accessories		
Underlay sun protection	0	0
Overlay sun protection	0	0
Vertical sun protection	0	0
Vertical glass elements	0	0
Tempura/Tempura Quadra heating system	0	0
LED light bar	0	0
Roof vent	0	0
Terrazza system posts		
115 post (square)	•	•
90 post (round)	•	•
Terrazza system guttering		
160 guttering	•	•
220 guttering (only possible with the 115 post)	0	0

● standard ○ optional — unavailable

#### \* With roof pitches < 5°:

- With large roof depths and the use of glass staves, there are restrictions with impermeability, if applicable, additional sealing measures are required here.
- Larger deposits form faster in front of glass staves (moss, biofilm etc.).
- With the use of trapezium fillings on the side, the glass area becomes very narrow and therefore neither visually attractive nor very easy to install.
- Using air vents may lead to water getting in (rain due to wind etc.).
- Water that is not drained and water pooling in front of the staves may lead to ice on the roof in cold temperatures.
- ice on the roof in cold tempe

## Terrazza Originale/Plus Technology



## Terrazza Originale/Plus Technology

#### **General notes**

#### Terrazza scope of delivery

All the small parts required to install a Terrazza roof are supplied as standard. Please also note any possible different or additional statements in the commercial or technical confirmation of the order.

#### Site measuring/Terrazza planning

- Accurate site measuring is a basic requirement for the job to be carried out well. It is the foundation for the roof's production and to establish other construction requirements.
- weinor needs the roof dimension you want. Please make a note of obstacles like: protruding walls, rainwater downpipes, etc.
- Remember: the roof must be aligned straight.
- Permanently mark the cutting check and location of the special features you noted on site.
- Ideally, take digital photos of the installation site. Your technicians will be grateful for the more detailed information from good photos later on. The weinor staff can then get a better idea of what the site looks like and possibly provide you with non-binding details.
- Also measure the current situation on your building site. This makes it easier to talk about any necessary changes without measuring the site again.
- Unless otherwise specified, the glazing elements will be provided in the specified standard version.
- When designing the glazing elements and specifying glass thicknesses, the relevant statutory regulations must be observed at all times. weinor plans the glazing elements according to the lowest wind load (installation height: 0–8 m; dynamic pressure: 500 N/m<sup>2</sup>) and applies the specified standard glass thickness to the glazing elements. If different GE types are being used, this may result in deviations in the shape and/or colour of the various handles and glazing beads.
- The owner and customer are ultimately responsible for the statics design of the roof, glazing elements and accessories. In this context, the relevant valid statutory regulations must be observed, in particular Eurocode DIN EN 1990 and 1991, which defines wind and snow loads.
- Powder coating: All weinor patio roof and glazing element surfaces are always supplied powder-coated. Caution, deviations in colour: the degree of sheen in the coating and different powder manufacturers may lead to deviations in colour occurring. The critical colours are RAL 9006 and RAL 9007 as well as all metallic (WT) colours.
- As a rule, production will not commence until after written approval of the order. Orders placed via the E-Shop

are accepted without written approval and forwarded to Production immediately after the order confirmation has been dispatched. No collateral agreements will be accepted as part of the contract.

Changes to orders made after an order has been approved are only possible in certain instances depending on how far along the production stage has advanced and will therefore incur an additional charge.

#### Sun protection

- You can either provide sun protection for the Terrazza roof using a WGM Top or undermounted Sottezza II conservatory awning.
- The weinor VertiTex II can provide sun protection for the front. This also provides glare and privacy protection.

#### Installation

- Check the structural conditions: foundation, floor panel, cutting check, masonry
- Check the drawing according to Engineering
- Preparatory work:
  - Check the roof and accessories scope of delivery with parts list/drawing from the confirmation of the order
  - Unpack the scope of delivery
  - Check it for damage
  - Start installation
  - Instructions are available for installation.

## Recommended installation material (not in scope of delivery)

- Fixings for mounting the roof to the wall and floor
- Fixings for glazing elements
- Glazing blocks, silicone, sealing glue, Kompri-Band, films, filler cord, insulation material, PU foam
- Weather protection angle bracket above the wall bracket
- Spacers for shimming glazing elements onto the floor

#### In case of complaints

If something appears to have not been carried out to your satisfaction:

- Take a photo of the package concerned (if possible, a digital photo).
- Make a detailed note of the causes, e.g. the actual dimensions of the supplied package. Our technicians can then compare the dimension with the target dimension to quickly establish the causes.
- Make a detailed note of the target dimension you would have expected. Our technicians can often draw important conclusions from this and give you more tips
- Please immediately contact the weinor office.

## Roof types and combination options

Terrazza			Orig	inale	Origin	ale Plus
		guttering	90 post	115 post	90 post	115 post
	Pent roof type A Depending on the design, differing distances between centre lines and the resultant additional roof panels can occur.	160 / 220	•	•	0	0
	Pent roof type A with wall offset Depending on the design, differing distances between centre lines and the resultant additional roof panels can occur.	160 / 220	0	0	0	0
	Pent roof type A with balcony recess Depending on the design, differing distances between centre lines and the resultant additional roof panels can occur.	160 / 220	0	0	0	0
R	Pent roof type A with guttering offset Depending on the design, differing distances between centre lines and the resultant additional roof panels can occur.	160	0	0	$\diamond$	$\diamond$
	Pent roof type A tapered wall bracket left/right Pent roof with tapered wall bracket or partially tapered wall bracket	160	0	0	0	0
	Pent roof type A tapered guttering left/right Pent roof with tapered guttering or partially tapered guttering	160	0	_	$\diamond$	-
R	Pent roof type B Pent roof with bent side roof supports, width of outer roof panel max. 1,000 mm, roof depth max. 4,500 mm	160	0	$\diamond$	_	_
	Pent roof type C Pent roof with tapered side roof supports, width of outer roof panel max. 1,000 mm, roof depth max. 4,500 mm	160	0	$\diamond$	\$	$\diamond$
A	Pent roof type G Pent roof with hipped and bevelled sides, with continuous guttering, width of outer roof panel max. 1,000 mm, roof depth max. 4,500 mm	160	0		_	_
	Pent roof type I Pent roof with hipped sides with continuous guttering, width of outer roof panel max. 1,000 mm, roof depth max. 4,500 mm	160	0	_	_	-
	Pitched roof type L Pitched roof, width max. 6,500 mm, roof depth max. 6,500 mm (observe minimum roof pitch of 5° – 30°)	160	0	$\diamond$	$\diamond$	$\diamond$
M	Pent roof type N Roof plane angled, outer corner always 90°, Hip rafters from 2 individual roof supports with cover plates	160	0	$\diamond$	_	$\diamond$
	Pent roof type R Roof plane angled, inner flute always 90°	160	0			

ullet standard  $\bigcirc$  optional  $\diamondsuit$  upon request — unavailable

## Terrazza Originale



Figures are in mm

## Terrazza Originale



### Terrazza Originale

#### 160 guttering – L roof support with and without side wall bracket

Vertical section through the roof support profiles with distances between centre lines and widths (dimensions also valid for S type roof support)







Gutter and post position on the wall



Gutter and post position on the wall

Gutter and post position, free-standing



Gutter and post position, free-standing

#### Terrazza Originale

#### Roof depth T (mm) 1000 1250 1500 1750 2000 2250 2500 2750 3000 3250 3500 3750 4000 4250 4500 4750 5000 5250 5500 5750 6000 90 post Roof pitch 5° Roof pitch 15° 1206 1273 1407 1474 1541 1608 1675 115 post Roof pitch 5° 1008 1075 1142 1209 1276 1343 1410 1477 1544 1611 1678 1745 Roof pitch 15°

#### Determining the distance between bottom edge of guttering to bottom edge of wall bracket

Distance D (between UKw and UKd)



## Terrazza Originale



#### 220 guttering - L roof support (max. roof depth 6,000 mm)





\* Order dimension
Htd Trapezium height on the guttering
Hw Wall bracket height
OKFF Top of floor
UKd Bottom of guttering
UKw Bottom of wall bracket
OKw Top of wall bracket

Roof pitch to	5°	10°	15°	20°	25°	30°	35°	40°	45°
S roof support wall bracket height in mm	152	153	156	159	164	171	180	192	208
L roof support wall bracket height in mm	192	194	197	202	208	217	229	245	264
Htd in mm	221	223	224	226	228	230	232	235	238

## Terrazza Originale



#### 220 guttering – L roof support with and without side wall bracket

#### Determining the distance between bottom edge of guttering to bottom edge of wall bracket

Roof depth T (mm)	1000	1250	1500	1750	2000	2250	2500	2750	3000	3250	3500	3750	4000	4250	4500	4750	5000	5250	5500	5750	6000
115 post (220 gutt	ering)																				
Roof pitch 5°	287	308	330	353	374	396	418	440	462	483	505	527	549	571	593	615	637	658	680	702	724
Roof pitch 15°	465	532	599	666	733	800	867	934	1001	1068	1135	1202	1269	1336	1403	1470	1537	1604	1671	1738	1805

Distance D (between UKw and UKd)





#### Terrazza Originale Plus



#### 160 guttering – S roof support (max. roof depth 3,500 mm)

#### 90 post



115 post



Terrazza

Originale Plus

10 mm or

12 mm laminated safety glass

\* Order dimension

Htd Trapezium height on the guttering

Hw Wall bracket height

OKFF Top of floor

10

S roof support

80

Multi-wall sheet

16 mm

UKd Bottom of guttering

UKw Bottom of wall bracket

OKw Top of wall bracket

Roof pitch to	5°	10°	15°
Hw in mm	152	153	156
Htd in mm	161	163	164

#### Terrazza Originale Plus



90 post



115 post





\* Order dimension

Trapezium height on the guttering Htd

- Ηw Wall bracket height
- **OKFF** Top of floor
- **UKd** Bottom of guttering
- UKw Bottom of wall bracket
- **OKw** Top of wall bracket

Roof pitch to	5°	10°	15°			
Hw in mm	192	194	197			
Htd in mm	161	163	164			

06

Terrazza

Originale Plus

10 mm or 12 mm laminated safety glass

#### Terrazza Originale Plus

#### 160 guttering – L roof support with and without side wall bracket

Vertical section through the roof support profiles with distances between centre lines and widths (dimensions also valid for type S roof support)







Gutter and post position on the wall



Gutter and post position on the wall

Gutter and post position, free-standing



Gutter and post position, free-standing

## Terrazza Originale Plus

#### Determining the distance between bottom edge of guttering to bottom edge of wall bracket

Roof depth T (mm)	1000	1250	1500	1750	2000	2250	2500	2750	3000	3250	3500	3750	4000	4250	4500	4750	5000	5250	5500	5750	6000
90 post																					
Roof pitch 5°	226	248	269	291	313	335	357	379	401	423	444	466	488	510	532	554	576	598	619	641	663
Roof pitch 15°	403	470	537	604	671	738	805	872	939	1005	1072	1139	1206	1273	1340	1407	1474	1541	1608	1675	1742
115 post																					
Roof pitch 5°	227	248	270	292	314	336	358	380	402	423	445	467	489	511	533	555	577	598	620	642	664
Roof pitch 15°	405	472	539	606	673	740	807	874	941	1008	1075	1142	1209	1276	1343	1410	1477	1544	1611	1678	1745

Distance D (between UKw and UKd)



#### Terrazza Originale Plus



## Terrazza Originale Plus

## 220 guttering – L roof support with and without side wall bracket



#### Determining the distance between bottom edge of guttering to bottom edge of wall bracket

Roof depth T (mm)	1000	1250	1500	1750	2000	2250	2500	2750	3000	3250	3500	3750	4000	4250	4500	4750	5000	5250	5500	5750	6000
115 post (220 gutt	ering)																				
Roof pitch 5°	287	308	330	353	374	396	418	440	462	483	505	527	549	571	593	615	637	658	680	702	724
Roof pitch 15°	465	532	599	666	733	800	867	934	1001	1068	1135	1202	1269	1336	1403	1470	1537	1604	1671	1738	1805

Distance D (between UKw and UKd)



## **Guttering steel reinforcement bar**

#### 160 guttering – steel reinforcement bar







2 x 140 steel reinforcement bars

Nithout steel r	einforcement bar
-----------------	------------------

1 x 140 steel reinforcement bar

Guttering weight – 160 guttering	excluding steel	1 x 140 steel	2 x 140 steel
kg/m (without side cover caps)	4.0	15.0	26.0

#### 220 guttering – steel reinforcement bar



Without steel reinforcement bar



1 x 140 steel reinforcement bar



2 x 140 steel reinforcement bars

Guttering weight – 220 guttering	excluding steel	1 x 140 steel	1 x 180 steel
kg/m (without side cover caps)	6.5	17.5	19.5

The maximum spans depend on the roof depth and required snow load. You can find the details about this in the current weinor Terrazza price list.

## **Guttering steel reinforcement bar**

#### Special feature: and only from weinor!

The steel reinforcement bar and roof gutter profile can be ordered separately. Thanks to the removable back of the 220 guttering, the 140 and 180 mm steel reinforcement bar can be inserted into the gutter from the back afterwards. This significantly reduces the weight for transport and installation.







Weight (kg/m)	220 guttering	140 steel	180 steel
Individual weight	6.5	11.0	13.0

#### **Guttering protective leaf grill**



160 guttering protective leaf grill



220 guttering protective leaf grill

# Terrazza Originale/Plus POSts

#### **Drain and posts**

#### 90 post





#### Invisibly integrated downspout

115 centre/wall post

Rainwater is discretely and systematically drained away through the integrated water drain. The downspout is invisibly integrated into one of the posts. The drain can also be purposefully fed through a post plate, if used.

#### Outside 115 post

# 

#### Sideways guttering drain (optional)



Drain on the side of the 160 and 220 guttering incl. cover plate and screw sockets (made of aluminium and powder-coated in same colour as roof)

#### Variable post positions

Terrazza Originale with indented posts



If the outer posts are indented, the centre post can be omitted for certain roof dimensions. Additional steel reinforcement bars in the guttering or the crossbeam also permit the number of posts and spacings to be changed.

Flexible reactions to structural situations that call for the variable positioning of the posts are also possible.

#### Maximal indent dimension of the posts

View from below View from below Width Width at rear at rear 1 Indented posts Indented posts Right Right -eft eft min. 70% roof width max. 1000 max. 1000 max. 1000 min. 70% roof width <u>max. 1</u>000 Both posts indented Both posts indented max. 20° max. 20° max. 20° Only 1 post indented Only 1 post indented

The maximum spacing between the posts can be increased via steel inserts in the guttering. Caution, this can increase the weight of the rain gutter. As snow loads increase, the maximum post spacings reduce accordingly.

## Terrazza Originale/Plus Posts

## Variable post positions

Posts on guttering/crossbeam for Terrazza Originale and Terrazza Originale Plus



160 guttering

160 guttering

Terrazza

Originale Plus

Terrazza Originale



220 guttering

## Terrazza Originale/Plus Posts

## Post plates

#### Post plate for fixing to the foundation



#### Cover cap on post plate for fixing to the foundation and for covering the attachment screws



Cover cap for post plate wall left/wall right

90 post



Cover cap for post plate



201

26

201







## Terrazza Originale/Plus Posts

## Aluminium base

#### Aluminium base for fixing to the foundation







#### Small aluminium base















115 post

# Terrazza Originale/Plus Accessories

#### Transoms and roof vents

#### Transoms in the roof area



From a pane length of 3,000 mm, it is advisable to split the roof glazing by means of a rigid transom.

The transom in the roof also stiffens the construction, hence improving its structural stability. This is relevant, for example, when using vertical all-glass elements, such as glass doors or side parts.



WeiTop DL permanent roof vent







A clever solution: the two offset glass panels of the WeiTop DL permanent roof vent ensure permanent ventilation and hence an agreeable climate.

#### The benefits

- Transparent all-glass solution for an elegant look
- Always powder-coated in roof colour
- Pre-equipped for the specified roof covering thickness (10, 12 and 16 mm)
- Optional insect screen or winter faceplate for manual assembly

## Vertical sun protection

#### VertiTex II and VertiTex WeiTop



The weinor VertiTex WeiTop vertical sun protection offers perfect privacy and glare protection. We recommend the fabrics from the screens by weinor<sup>®</sup> collection. Due to the different fabric qualities, a suitable fabric can be selected according to the application

- Suitable for large areas (600 cm x 240 cm)
- VertiTex WeiTop for simple attachment into the Terrazza 160 guttering
- VertiTex II round with rope or rail guide, ideal for Terrazza with 220 guttering

#### VertiTex WeiTop on Terrazza Originale with 160 guttering and 90 post



WeiTop rope holder on Terrazza 90 post

#### VertiTex WeiTop on Terrazza Originale with 160 guttering and 115 post

Fabric width = VertiTex WeiTop width - 104 mm ± 6 mm permissible tolerance



Fabric width = VertiTex WeiTop width - 104 mm ± 6 mm permissible tolerance

Additional information can be found in the VertiTex vertical sun protection system chapter.

14 x 35 x 16 mm rope holder on Terrazza 115 post

## Vertical sun protection



Additional information can be found in the VertiTex II technical folder.



14 x 35 x 16 mm rope holder on Terrazza 115 post



115 post with 14 x 35 x 16 mm rope holder (is used with the "indented rop" version)



115 post with 20 x 38 x 28 mm rope holder (is used with the "outside rope guide" version) Caution: Only possible with rope guide next to the fabric, e.g. in the centre with multi-section units

## Vertical sun protection

#### VertiTex II Rail/Zip 75/92/112 on Terrazza Originale with 220 guttering and 115 post





220 guttering with side top lateral locking bar



220 guttering with side bottom lateral locking bar

## Vertical sun protection

VertiTex II Rope/Rail/Zip 75/92/112 on Terrazza Originale with 220 guttering and 115 post



220 guttering with side top lateral locking bar



220 guttering with side bottom lateral locking bar

## Vertical sun protection

#### VertiTex II Rail/Zip with 220 guttering and 115 post





VertiTex II Rail/Zip all round, multi-section unit in front



VertiTex II Rail/Zip all round



VertiTex II Rail/Zip in front with lateral wall Note: the guide rails end over the drain pipe as standard (note the PA dimensions)

## Vertical sun protection

#### VertiTex II Rail/Zip with 220 guttering and 115 post



VertiTex II Rail/Zip lateral



VertiTex II Rail/Zip lateral

## Vertical sun protection

#### VertiTex II Rope with 220 guttering and 115 post



VertiTex II Rope all round, multi-section unit in front



VertiTex II Rope all round



VertiTex II Rope in front with lateral wall Note: the guide rails end over the drain pipe as standard (note the PA dimensions)

## Vertical sun protection

#### VertiTex II Rope with 220 guttering and 115 post



VertiTex II Rope lateral



VertiTex II Rope lateral

## Vertical sun protection with glazing elements

#### VertiTex II lateral with w17 easy 2-track

#### VertiTex II lateral with w17 easy 3-track





## Vertical sun protection with glazing elements



#### VertiTex II lateral with w17 easy 4-track

#### VertiTex II lateral with w17 easy 5-track

30

30

Terrazza Originale/Plus depth

GE width

## **Overlay sun protection**

#### WGM Top - over roof heat protection



Over roof conservatory awnings from weinor protect the Terrazza patio roof or the Glasoase<sup>®</sup> from excessive heat build-up.

#### WGM Top on Terrazza





#### Installation on weinor Terrazza



#### Support bracket mounting plate



For weinor Terrazza L 150 roof support



For weinor Terrazza

S 110 roof support

#### Adaptor plates

A support bracket preparation is optionally available for conservatory awnings – perfectly matched, as from one system.

Installation on a Terrazza patio roof

#### Determining the projection of the conservatory awning

Depth of Terrazza (mm)	1000	1500	2000	2500	3000	3500	4000	4500	5000	5500	6000
Roof pitch 5°	1108	1610	2112	2614	3116	3618	4120	4621	5123	5625	6127
Roof pitch 15°	1134	1652	2170	2687	3205	3723	4240	4758	5275	5793	6311
#### Terrazza Originale/Plus Sun Protection

#### **Underlay sun protection**

#### Sottezza II – undermounted glare protection



The Sottezza II is the ideal undermounted sun protection for the weinor Terrazza patio roof and for the Glasoase®. On sunny days, it offers pleasant glare and sun protection.

#### Sottezza II with glazing elements on a free-standing Terrazza





Our recommendation and also ideal for retrofitting:

- Sottezza II indented 50 mm on each side
- Standard for orders via Quick & Easy

#### Sottezza II without glazing elements on a free-standing Terrazza

#### 1-panel unit



#### 2-panel unit or two 1-panel units



Sottezza II flush outside on the roof support

Sottezza II

ottezza

<u>Terraz</u>za

order width

#### Side view of the Sottezza II



The sun protection runs below the roof support. Combined with LED light bars or LED Design, the Sottezza II must be mounted using suitable spacers at a spacing of 30 mm to the roof supports.

#### Determining the projection of the Sottezza II (applies for Terrazza)

Depth of Terrazza (mm)	1000	1500	2000	2500	3000	3500	4000	4500	5000	5500	6000
Roof pitch 5°	940	1442	1944	2445	2947	3449	3951	4453	4955	5457	5959
Roof pitch 15°	959	1476	1994	2512	3029	3547	4064	4582	5100	5617	6135

#### **Glazing elements**



The weinor Glasoase<sup>®</sup> elegant conservatory cooling system comprises a Terrazza patio roof and flexible or fixed, all-glass elements. All system components are available from weinor. This creates a host of combination options. The most diverse glazing elements offer protection where it is required, and allow the Glasoase<sup>®</sup> to be opened whenever desired.



Fixed-glazing side elements SUPER LITE w50-c



#### SUPER LITE w50-c side element

- Maximum transparency
- Adds fixed glazing to the Glasoase<sup>®</sup> design
- Very attractively priced
- All-glass fixed glazing under the side Terrazza roof support



#### LITE w50-c side element

- Highly transparent
- Attractively priced
- Fixed glazing below the Terrazza side patio roof support (trapezium), can be combined with w17 easy



#### CLASSIC side element w50-c

- Extremely robust and stable
- Load-bearing
- Very good value for money
- Fixed glazing below the Terrazza side patio roof support (trapezium with vertical staves), can be combined with w17 easy

#### weinor all-glass walls

Alongside an all-round view, weinor all-glass walls provide reliable protection against the wind and driving rain. Available as fixed or sliding models depending on your preferences and needs. All systems are basically suitable for patio roofs, loggias and balconies.



Full glass sliding door w17 easy

- Opens sideways
- Actuator for easy closing
- Requires several guide rails
- Standing construction

### weinor Glasoase<sup>®</sup> Benefits

Frameless all-glass elements allow the weinor patio roof to be expanded into the Glasoase<sup>®</sup>. This creates transparent weather protection with an unspoiled panoramic view to prolong the patio season. All weinor system components fit together perfectly and can be retro-fitted.



#### Flexible, vertical all-glass elements

enable, depending on the version, partial or complete opening of the Glasoase<sup>®</sup> – to suit individual requirements



#### **Fixed glazing**

For complete sides or sideways trapezium glazing, can be combined with flexible all-glass elements



#### Suitable sun protection

Glare, heat and privacy protection with sun protection solutions as required



#### Expandable system

Can be retro-fitted with other accessories even after many years, thanks to the modular range:

- Patio lighting
- Tempura
- Roof vent
- BiConnect remote control
- Roof or vertical sun protection

On one side at the front w50-c SUPER LITE

## w50-c side element SUPER LITE and w17 easy

#### 120 100 50 70 50 10 0 30 30 30 Terrazza Originale/Plus depth Terrazza Originale/Plus depth GE width GE width w50-c SUPER LITE w17 easy 3-track w17 easy 5-track w17 easy 2-track w17 easy 4-track 35 2 w50-c SUPER LITE w17 easy 2-track 10 K) 115 115 w17 easy 3-track w17 easy 4-track w17 easy 5-track GE width 115 3 115 3 Terrazza Originale/Plus order width Terrazza Originale/Plus order width

On one side at the front w17 easy 2-5-track

## w17 easy

#### At the front between posts, 2-5-track



## 220 guttering with w17 easy

At the front between posts, 2 to 5-track

At the front behind posts, 2 to 5-track





### 160 guttering with w17 easy

#### At the front between posts, 2 to 5-track

At the front behind posts, 2 to 5-track





# **Glazing elements (GE)**





**Glass sliding door** 

## w17 easy w17 easy Individual unit

The **w17 easy** from weinor is equally as suitable as weather proofing for patios, balconies and pergola awnings as well as a room divider for indoors with the new optional accessible floor rails. The full glass sliding door is a breeze to operate and also locks if required thanks to the premium-quality fittings. High-quality handle and lock versions are available for this. The **w17 easy** is also fitted with a soft closing system. Thanks to the cushioned leaf actuator and high-quality stainless steel rollers, the glass elements are extremely durable as well as quiet and easy to move. Retrofitted to many types of roofs, the full glass sliding system offers maximum transparency without any vertical frame: for rooms flooded with daylight and smooth transitions from the garden to the house.

**Soft-Closing-System:** Quiet and easy movement of glass elements thanks to cushioned leaf actuation.



ii



Angled and straight floor connection profiles: perfect connection to existing floors (for standard rails too)



# w17 easy Highlights



Foot-operated panel catch: Convenient closing



Clever CleanCase<sup>®</sup>: Easy cleaning



Floor rails with slope to the outside:

Version 1: Standard rail for secure fixing



**Version 2:** Flatter and therefore accessible



weinor 2021 | 07 Glazing elements (GE) | Glass sliding door w17 easy

## w17 easy Benefits



### Soft-Closing-System

The w17 easy full glass sliding door is fitted as standard with the new soft closing system. It allows for the extremely quiet and easy movement of the glass leafs. The system is fitted with high-quality stainless steel rollers and guide rails. In addition, all the leaf actuators, leaf stop bars in the end positions and wall gap sealing profiles are fitted with softer cushioning elements.



#### 2 new floor rails – lower and more angled

The standard rails can be fixed securely, the flat floor rails also ensure an accessible transition. It is therefore ideal for use in living areas. Straight and angled attachment profiles ensure a smooth transition to existing floors.

- Standard rail 26 mm high with integrated CleanCase<sup>®</sup> (optional without CleanCase<sup>®</sup> – with drainage holes)
- Flat floor rail, 13 mm high, accessible
- Angled or straight floor gap sealing profiles (optional)









Lockplate version – opens on two sides, closes in the centre

Single system – opens on one or two sides, closes on the left and/or right

Corner unit – frameless full glass corner, e.g. for balconies and loggias

#### w17 easy Benefits



## Clever CleanCase<sup>®</sup> – easy cleaning of the standard floor rail

The standard floor rail has a practical CleanCase<sup>®</sup> – easy removal of dirt using a hand brush or cloth.

• Reliable drainage outside



#### **Comfortable foot-operated catch**

weinor developed an intelligent fixing mechanism so that the glass leaves remain reliably in the position you want when fully or partly open.

- Comfortable to operate without having to bend down
- Locking and releasing of w17 easy by applying slight pressure with the foot



#### High-quality handle and lock versions

The full glass sliding doors can be operated conveniently using the high-quality handle versions. The lockcase with hung bolt offers additional security thanks to interlocking (option).

- Standard handles: in stainless steel and the system colour
- Cup pull handles: in V4A stainless steel for extreme corrosion resistance
- Lockcase and hung bolt: in system colour (A4 stainless steel rustfree lockcase inside, highly corrosion-resistant nickel silver key and profile cylinder), can be locked from the inside, can be locked from both sides as an option.

#### w17 easy Benefits



## Seal profiles – well-sheltered against the wind and rain (optional)

Strong brush profiles seal the transition between the glass panels and the side and top guide profiles. There is also a new gap sealing profile to perfectly seal the corner gap between glass panels.

- Highly resistant to driving rain and windproof thanks to the combination with sealing profiles under the glass leaves
- Transparent gap seals between the glass panels for added weather protection





#### **Retrofittable – for virtually every patio roof**

Being a floor-mounted structure, weinor's full glass sliding door wall fits under virtually every patio roof as well as many other roof structures.

- weinor's patio roof can be extended to create a Glasoase®
- No additional costs for structural safety adjustments
- Matching profiles from weinor for easy retrofitting
- Easy to clean and easily accessible from the outside



## Maximum transparency and premium weather protection

An unobstructed panoramic view all around:

- Full glass design with top and bottom guide rails
- No vertical frames between the panels
- Noticeable noise reduction
- Single-pane safety glass in 6, 8 und 10 mm possible
- Structural safety calculations performed by certified engineering firm

# w17 easy Technology

Versions of the w17 easy	Single system	Lockplate version	Corner unit	
Technology				
Max. width of system	6,600 mm	10,000 mm	combination of single systems and/or lockplate versions	
Max. height of system	2,600 mm	2,600 mm	2,600 mm	
Number of leafs	2 to 5	4 to 10	2 to 10 per side	
Opening type	parallel-sliding	parallel-sliding	parallel-sliding	
Standard lock	interior	interior	interior	
Glass type	single-pane safety glass in 6	single-pane safety glass in 6 mm, 8 mm, 10 mm (satin-finish as option)		
Height compensation: standard	0 mm / – 25 mm	0 mm / – 25 mm	0 mm / – 25 mm	
Aluminium handle bar in system colour	•	•	•	
Universal 26 mm floor rail with CleanCase®	•	•	•	
Flat 13 mm floor rail, accessible	0	0	0	
Guide rail type	2-track to 5-track, constructio	n depth 50 to 110 mm, trimme	ed in or on top	
Soft-Closing-System	•	•	•	
Accessories				
Brush profile	0	0	0	
Gap sealing profiles	0	0	0	
Wall gap sealing profile	0	0	0	
Additional standard lock on fixed leaf	0	0	0	
Lockcase and hung bolt (lockable from the inside)	0	0	0	
Lockcase and hung bolt (locks from either side)	0	0	0	
Heat-soak test	0	0	0	
V4A stainless steel handle bar	0	0	0	
V4A stainless steel cup pull handle	0	0	0	

● standard ○ optional — unavailable

### **Technical details**



#### Soft-Closing-System

The w17 easy full glass sliding door is fitted as standard with the new Soft-Closing-System. It allows for the extremely quiet and easy movement of the glass leafs. In addition, all the leaf actuators, leaf stop bars in the end positions and wall gap sealing profiles are fitted with softer cushioning elements.

## Drainage options in the bottom and top guide rails





interior

Top guide rail







without CleanCase®



Flat floor rail

520

#### Water drainage holes for systems with no CleanCase®



outside interior  $\frac{1}{250}$   $\frac{1}{250}$ 

X = all other holes are drilled symmetrically distributed over the length of the profile

## Cross-sections (not to scale)

#### Vertical cross-sections





2-track









3-track



5-track

weinor 2021 | 07 Glazing elements (GE) | Glass sliding door w17 easy

#### **Cross-sections (not to scale)**



The glass leaves are securely held in the top guide rails by a stable leaf stop bar. It is used with straight systems on the side without a wall gap sealing

profile and in the centre with lockcase doors.



Leaf stop

#### **Floor rails**







Floor rail with no CleanCase® with drainage holes (optional) trimmed in with floor gap sealing profiles



Floor rail with CleanCase  $^{\circ}$  partly trimmed in with floor gap sealing and threshold profile



Floor rail with  ${\sf CleanCase}^{\circ}$  or optionally with drainage holes on top with no attachment profiles



(no drainage holes)

Flat floor rail on top with threshold profile

Finished floor Substructure

Floor rail with CleanCase  $^{\circ}$  partly trimmed in with threshold profile



(with optional drainage holes)

Flat floor rail on top inside with threshold profile



Flat floor rail trimmed in, on both sides with floor gap sealing profile

#### Handle









Standard handle

Handle on both sides

Knob for lockcase and hung bolt Cup pull handle, both options

## Height adjustment and standard locking



Standard locking



#### **Cross-sections (not to scale)**



K-JAC-M 5-track



between panels in 90° corner



ority before side before front

#### Possible leaf arrangements in corners















07



**Examples of designs for standard Glasoasen®** 

----- = track without leafs



interior





Other designs possible

#### **Examples of custom designs**



outside outside interior interior

Other designs and options on request, an extra charge will apply in most cases

# w17 easy Installation

## **Glazing element provision**

#### Possible installation behind a structure



Concealed screw fittings





**Fixed glazing** 

w50-c

The **w50-c** fixed glazing element is distinguished by its variety of shapes and individual applications. To go with the weinor Glasoase<sup>®</sup>, these glazing elements can be combined with fixed glazing elements used over an entire side or as a triangular-shaped element below the side patio roof support. The doors and windows (fixed glazed or side-hung and/or pivot-hung windows) made from non thermally-insulated aluminium profiles can be perfectly combined with the Terrazza patio roof or weinor PergoTex II pergola awning..

# w50-c Technology

Versions of the w50-c	Fixed glazing	Windows with leafs	Doors	SuperLite
	+	$\searrow$		
Technology				
Max. width of system	5,000 mm	1,500 mm	1,100 mm	6,000 mm
Max. height of system	2,400 mm	2,400 mm	2,400 mm	3,000 mm (depending on the glazing)
Fittings	fixed	tilt-and-turn	side-hung	fixed
Locking mechanism		interior (grip)	inside/outside	
Panel thicknesses	6, 8, 10, 24 mm	6, 8, 10, 24 mm	6, 8, 10, 24 mm	6, 8, 10, 24 mm
Shapes	<ul> <li>rectangular</li> <li>sloping element</li> <li>tapered element</li> <li>sloped on one side</li> <li>sloped on two sides</li> <li>triangular/tapered element</li> <li>trapezium</li> <li>square angled</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>rectangular</li> <li>sloping element</li> <li>sloped on one side</li> <li>sloped on two sides</li> <li>trapezium</li> </ul>	• rectangular	<ul> <li>rectangular</li> <li>sloping element</li> </ul>
Accessories				
Attachment profile	35, 40 mm frame wideners	35, 40 mm frame wideners	35, 40 mm frame wideners	35, 40 mm frame wideners gap seals for 6, 8, 10 mm glass

● standard ○ optional — unavailable

# w50-c Planning

#### **Cross-sections and dimensions**

#### Fixed glazing w50-c





Frame profile 1: standard frame

Frame profile 2: large frame



Cross-section of stave 81 mm

0







Frame 59

A = 100

D = 86

B = 136









59

42

= 30.9



6; 8; 10; 24

1¢F \_+r

50

+

4	Window- sill	A	В	c	D
	100 mm	100	136	11	86
	120 mm	120	156	13	106
101	150 mm	150	186	16	136



Frame widener with frame 59

•	For frame widener, see Accessories	A
		10
		15
		30
		35
		40
		50
		60
		80
		100
		150



Windowsill attachment with frame 59

17.1

## w50-c Planning

## w50-c special shapes fixed glazing and window leaf

Frames designed in same shape as the square fixed glazing, other cross-sections and dimensions and designs on request.

Fixed glazing special shape w50-c		Window <sup>1</sup>
Sloping element (LITE side element and CLASSIC side element)	min. <sup>2</sup> 160 mm	
Tapered element (min. 20°)		not possible
Sloped on one side	min. <sup>2</sup> 160 mm	
Bevelled on two sides (asymmetrical version also available)	min. <sup>2</sup> 160 mm	
Tapered element, two sides (min. 20°) (asymmetrical version also available)		not possible
Trapezium (min. 20°) (asymmetrical version also available)		
Square (min. 20°)		not possible

<sup>1</sup> Producibility depends on size with windows. A minimum leaf height of 300 mm is necessary for pivot-hung windows. Please contact us for details. Often only tilting leafs possible.

<sup>2</sup> Minimum height for fixed glazing

### **Cross-sections and dimensions**



Vertical section frame 59

Vertical section frame 78

调

96

96

16





Lockplate design frame 59

## w50-c Planning

## **Cross-sections and dimensions**

Door w50-c



Door opens inwards

Vertical cross-sections:



Vertical cross-sections: Door opens outwards

61







Horizontal cross-sections: door opens inwards





Horizontal cross-sections: door opens outwards

## w50-c Planning

## **Cross-sections and dimensions**

#### SUPER LITE w50-c all-glass fixed glazing



Vertical cross-section with reveal profile 35



Vertical cross-section with reveal profile 105

## Accessories





## Accessories LED lighting | Tempura heating system

Every minute that the patio user can stay outside longer counts! Which is why weinor has developed intelligent accessories for awnings, patio roofs and Glasoasen<sup>®</sup>. **LED lighting** creates an attractive atmosphere with its warm glow while allowing the patio to be used for much longer. Based on modern technology, the innovative LEDs can save a great deal of energy. The weinor **Tempura** and **Tempura Quadra heating systems** can be mounted virtually anywhere, are easy to retrofit and generate pleasant warmth.

# **LED lighting**



## Energy-saving LED technology in a timelessly lovely design

weinor LED light bars add that special touch to any patio: their warm glow creates attractive lighting while allowing the patio to be used for much longer. Based on modern LED technology, the innovative light bars can save a great deal of energy. What is more, the light-emitting diodes have a long lifetime of some 30,000 hours, also helping to save resources. weinor LED light bars can be operated and even dimmed using BiConnect radio technology.

## LED | LED Design round/square | 3Spot round/square | LED RGB Strip light bars

LED light bar versions	LED light bar	LED Design light bar round/square	3Spot light bar round/square	LED RGB Strip
	·			-
Technology				
Max. width	650 cm	650 cm	650 cm	500 cm
Max. no. of spotlights	11	11	3	60 LED/m
Bar size (w x h)	75 x 89 mm	80 x 51 mm	80 x 51 mm	31 x 65 mm
Power consumption	2.6 watts LED lights	2.6 watts LED lights	2.6 watts LED lights	4.9 watts/m
Light output	187 lumen/spotlight	187 lumen/spotlight	187 lumen/spotlight	approx. 98 lumen/m
Light colour	white	white	white	48 colours, 3 white
IP code	IP 44	IP 44	IP 44	IP 33
Mounting alternatives	wall and roof mounting o	r straight on the product		
Design				
47 standard frame colours	•	•	•	•
Over 150 other RAL colours	0	0	0	0
9 trend colours	•	•	•	•
Other structural colours	0	0	0	0
Controls				
BiConnect radio control (infinitely dimmable)	0	0	0	0
Somfy RTS/io (not dimmable)	0	0	0	<ul> <li>setting colours and dimming on the bar</li> </ul>
Hard wired switch (not dimmable)	•	•	•	<ul> <li>setting colours and dimming on the bar</li> </ul>
Accessories/attachment				
Fixing positions standard:	wall mounting	roof mounting or Terrazza roof support mounting	Terrazza roof support mounting	wall mounting
Fixing positions optional:	additional roof mount- ing set with angle bracket	set of adjustable brack- ets for wall mounting		
Cabling accessories standard:		connection lead 3.2 m to connect 2 light bars	connection lead 2.5 m to connect 2 light bars or 2 x 2.5 m for 3 light bars	10 m connecting lead for control
Cabling accessories optional:		2.5 m cable track with adhesive tape	2.5 m cable track with adhesive tape	
Motion sensors	<ul> <li>The LED light bars car for example from Bus</li> </ul>	n be optionally combined w ch-Jäger or Gira (not possib	ith a motion sensor, le with radio control)	

● standard ○ optional — unavailable

#### Energy efficiency



## LED light bars – 30,000 hours of lighting with minimal energy consumption

With their timelessly lovely design, the weinor light bars match more than just weinor products:

- Made in Germany: developed by weinor, guaranteeing quality and spare parts availability
- Individual LED lights can easily be replaced
- Operating life of 30,000 hours
- Energy-saving: 85% lower energy consumption than halogen lighting
- Infinitely dimmable when used with BiConnect radio control



#### New: LED RGB Strip

With 60 coloured LEDs per meter and a finely tuned diffuser, the LED RGB Strip bar produces an evenly distributed and pleasant light.

- Selection of 48 colours and 3 whites
- Approx. 4.9 watt output per meter, depending on the set color
- Max. length 5 metres
- Can be installed anywhere
- Timeless, elegant design

#### LED and LED Design round/square light bars

#### Size and number of LED lamps

Width of light bar in cm	Number of separate LED spotlights	Width of light bar in cm	Number of separate LED spotlights
150 – 164	2	385 – 439	7
165 – 219	3	440 - 494	8
220 – 274	4	495 – 549	9
275 – 329	5	550 – 604	10
330 – 384	6	605 – 650	11

The LED spotlights in the light bars are generally positioned symmetrically. In the case of multi-section units, the spacing at the section joints may be irregular.



Left: defective spotlight

#### LED spotlight failure display

Patented failure display for LED spotlight: a defective spotlight is displayed as a red light. The other spotlights light up as before.

## Circuit diagram overview for LED Design round/square



2. Circuit diagram for BiConnect control





4. Circuit diagram for Somfy io-homecontrol control



Schematic diagram of light bars for a coupling. Light bars can be designed both individually and with other couplings.

## LED | LED Design round/square | 3Spot round/square | LED RGB Strip light bars

#### **Cross-sections**

LED light bar



LED Design round/3Spot round light bar



LED Design square/3Spot square light bar



#### LED Design 3Spot round/square: position of the LED spotlights and cable output



- No LED Design 3Spots round/square shorter than 1640 mm possible.
- An LED Design 3Spot round/square light bar always comprises 3 LED spotlights. No more than 3 light bars can be combined to make one installation.
- Several installations will need to be used if more light bars are required.
- Only one remote receiver is required for the light bar installation.

#### LED RGB Strip light bar and cable output



#### Clip-in profile cover



The fixing and internal control are covered by the elegant profile cover.



- (a) on the side
- (b) at the top
- (c) at the rear


#### **Installation options**

#### **LED RGB Strip**



#### LED Design/3Spot/ round/square

#### Light bar installation on the wall using adjustable holder set



95



120



J!!

C COLORE



80



5

#### LED light bar

# Installation on the wall under the awning



#### **Roof mounting**



Roof mounting or roof support mounting possible, e.g. on Terrazza

**Note:** Install the LED bar in a location protected from the weather and always with the illuminated area facing downwards.

#### **Roof mounting**

#### weinor 2021 | 08 Accessories | LED lighting

# **Tempura heating system**



# Tempura patio heating – a great performance from a small heater

The weinor Tempura heating system provides pleasant warmth on the patio quickly. It can be mounted anywhere, is easy to retrofit and generates pleasant warmth in the evenings and during the cooler months. The infrared rays can be felt as soon as the system is switched on. There is no lengthy pre-warming process as required with other heaters (e.g. medium wave or dark radiators). When operated using the BiConnect radio control from weinor, the Tempura heating system can be fine tuned to any level. It an be angled as required to target a specific area and provide pleasing temperatures. The Tempura is available in 2 versions: **Tempura** with its classic round look and **Tempura Quadra** in a modern square design.

Tempura Quadra has been awarded with:



reddot award 2018 winner



Tempura and Tempura Quadra are developed and produced in Germany. The weinor powder coating allows for maximum quality and a vast variety of colours.

# **Tempura heating** Benefits



#### Tempura heating system – 2 versions for every style of home

You can choose from 2 versions to suit your personal taste: the classic Tempura with a rather round look and Tempura Quadra in a square design. The compact heating systems blend subtly into any style of architecture and home.



#### **Energy-saving infrared heat as soon as you** switch it on

The heating system's warming infrared rays can be felt as soon as the system is switched on. There is no lengthy pre-warming process as required with other heaters (e.g. medium wave heaters). New infrared tubes filter up to 99% of the visible rays in the Tempura Quadra. When operated using the BiConnect radio control, the Tempura heating system can be fine tuned to any level. Note: Tension-related clicking noises may be heard when the system is switched on or off.



#### Swivelling housing – easy to install

The heating system's housing can be swivelled up and down to any angle. This allows for perfectly targeted heating. The Tempura and Tempura Quadra can be fitted to any wall using the universal bracket. The Tempura Quadra can also be attached straight to the weinor Opal Design II awning and the round Tempura can be attached to the weinor Semina Life awning using a special bracket.



Tempura Quadra

#### Housing the radio elements

While the remote receivers can be housed in the optional design bar with the Tempura, they can be integrated into the base with the Tempura Quadra.





#### Protected against overheating and splash-proof

The Tempura is constructed for outdoor use. No extra splash protection is required, e.g. a pane of glass. TÜV tested, protection rating I, protection type IP 24.



# Tempura heating Technology

## Overview of the Tempura Quadra and Tempura patio heating systems

Heating system	Tempura Quadra	Tempura
Technology		
Dimensions (width x height x depth)	40.5 cm x 13 cm x 17 cm; 40.5 cm x 13 cm x 9 (for Opal Design II)	46 cm x 13 cm x 10,4 cm
Output/power consumption	230 volts, 50 hertz, 1,500 watts	230 volts, 50 hertz, 1,500 watts
Weight	4.4 kg (Universal); 3 kg (for Opal Design II)	2.6 kg
Tilt radius		
Universal wall mounting	40°	40°
Universal roof mounting (can be swivelled in both directions)	65°	70°
Opal Design II fixing position	15°	40°
Semina Life fixing position	-	15°
Mounting alternatives		
Universal wall and ceiling mounting	•	•
Bracket for attachment to Opal Design II	•	•
Bracket for attachment to Semina Life	-	•
260 attachment for installation on the Terrazza Pure guttering or the wall	0	_
Design		
47 standard frame colours	•	•
Over 150 other RAL colours	0	0
9 trend colours	•	•
Other structural colours	0	0
Controls		
Radio control (for more information see Control and drive technology folder)	<ul> <li>BiConnect BiRec HD (dimmable)</li> <li>BiConnect BiRec On/Off (not dimmable)</li> <li>Somfy Heating Slim Receiver RTS (not dimmable)</li> <li>Heating Slim Receiver on/off io 2KW STAS3/STAK3 (not dimmable)</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>BiConnect BiRec HD (dimmable)</li> <li>BiConnect BiRec On/Off (not dimmable)</li> <li>Somfy Heating Slim Receiver RTS (not dimmable)</li> <li>Heating Slim Receiver on/off io 2KW STAS3/STAK3 (not dimmable)</li> </ul>
Hard wired to existing power supply	•	•
Cabling	0.4 m silicone lead, Hirschmann coupling and (not suitable for continuous use)	1.5 m lead with Schuko plug for start-up
Quality		
	Made in Germany	
	TÜV-tested safety (GS certified); IP code 24; Protection class I	

● standard ○ optional — unavailable

# Sectional drawing and mounting alternatives for Tempura Quadra/Tempura

#### Sectional drawing







Tempura

#### Attachment using special bracket



When attached to an Opal Design II, the Tempura Quadra can be swivelled 15°.



When attached to an Opal Design II, the Tempura can be swivelled 40°.



When attached to the Semina Life, the Tempura can be swivelled 15°.

08

#### Tempura heating system Technology

## Sectional drawing and mounting alternatives for Tempura Quadra/Tempura

#### Tempura Quadra/Tempura wall mounting



When mounted on a wall,the Tempura Quadra can be swivelled 40°.



When mounted on a wall, the Tempura can be swivelled 40°.

#### Tempura Quadra/Tempura roof mounting



When mounted on a roof, the Tempura Quadra can be swivelled 65°.



When mounted on a roof, the Tempura can be swivelled 70°.

#### Tempura Quadra installation on the Terrazza Pure guttering or the wall using the 260 attachment



Installation without glazing element possible with Sottezza II



Installation with glazing element possible without Sottezza II

#### Tempura Quadra wall and roof mounting using 260 attachment





260 Roof mounting



# **Controls and Motor Drives**





# **Controls and Motor Drives**

Radio controls Wired control units Motor drives | Gear drives

09

# Controls



# Don't flip out, flip switches: smart accessories to make life easier on your patio

weinor offers a wide variety of bespoke solutions to operate and control awnings, LED light bars and heaters. And for those people looking for something more convenient than a gear drive or wired controls, BiConnect, a set of intuitive products designed especially for weinor, offers the ultimate in controls. For awnings, the favoured option is a hand transmitter with LED feedback, while Glasoasen® are best operated and controlled using a hand transmitter with display – or even by iPhone/iPad. Customers intending to turn their patio controls into a fully-automated system one day are best advised to purchase Somfy io-homecontrol®. In turn, the triedand-tested Somfy RTS is ideal for customers who already appreciate and are familiar with this system.

#### Controls

## Control systems at a glance

#### weinor accessories: smart products to make life easier – absolutely reliable and simple to control

System	Operation	Receiver	Sensor	Motor drives
BiConnect	Hand transmitter: • BiEasy 1M • BiEasy 5M • BiEasy 15M Go! iPhone / iPad: • BiEasy App Wall transmitter: • BiEasy 1MW-3V	Awning drive: • BiRec MA • BiRec MA-K Awning + LED lighting: • BiRec MLED Awning, LED lighting, Valance Plus: • BiRec MVLED LED; heating in combination with Schuko plug: • BiRec ST LED lighting: • BiRec LED • BiRec LED • BiRec RGB • BiRec RGB • BiRec RGB -48 V Other electronic accessories: • BiRec On/Off (for retrofitting) • BiRec On/Off-1 (if integrated in the product) Heating: • BiRec HD	Sun sensor: • BiSens Sun-Solar Sun/wind sensors: • BiSens SW-230V/ Solar+* Sun/wind/rain sensor: • BiSens SWR-230V Product protection sensor: • BiSens Agido-3V	<ul> <li>Becker</li> <li>Somfy</li> <li>elero RolTop</li> <li>elero SunTop</li> </ul>
Somfy io-homecontrol® homecontrol	<ul> <li>Hand transmitter:</li> <li>Situo 1 io Pure II</li> <li>Situo 5 io Pure II</li> <li>Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II</li> <li>Wall transmitter:</li> <li>Smoove 1 io Pure Shine Control:</li> <li>Connexon io</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Awning drive:</li> <li>Awning Slim Receiver io Plug (retrofitting a hard wired motor with radio control</li> <li>weinor PergoTex II, Volant Plus:</li> <li>Awning Slim Receiver io Plug</li> <li>LED lighting:</li> <li>Lighting Receiver Variation on/off io</li> <li>Heating:</li> <li>Heating Slim Receiver on/off io</li> </ul>	Sun sensor, battery-operated: • Sunis WireFree io II Wind sensor, battery-operated • Eolis WireFree io • Eolis 3DWireFree io	• Sunea io remote motor
Somfy RTS RTS View of the second seco	<ul> <li>Hand transmitter:</li> <li>Situo 1/5 RTS Pure II</li> <li>Situo 1/5 Soliris RTS Pure II each with 1 or 5 channels</li> <li>Wall transmitter:</li> <li>Smoove 1 RTS Pure Shine</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Awning drive: Universal Receiver RTS (wired motor drive with radio can be retrofitted)</li> <li>LED lighting: <ul> <li>Lighting Slim Receiver RTS</li> </ul> </li> <li>Volant Plus: <ul> <li>Universal Slim Receiver RTS</li> </ul> </li> <li>Heating: <ul> <li>Heating Slim Receiver RTS Plug, not dimmable</li> <li>Optional Chronis wireless timer system</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Wind sensor:</li> <li>Eolis Sensor RTS</li> <li>Eolis 3D WireFree RTS</li> <li>Wind/sun sensor:</li> <li>Soliris Sensor RTS</li> <li>Rain sensor:</li> <li>Ondeis</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Somfy RTS remote- controlled motor</li> </ul>
Wired control units	<ul> <li>Wall switch installed on site</li> <li>Soliris Uno</li> <li>Soliris Smoove Uno set with control unit</li> </ul>	_	Sun/wind sensors: • Soliris Sensor Rain sensor: • Ondeis	<ul><li>Becker</li><li>Somfy</li></ul>
Gear drive	Gear handle	—	_	_

\* BiSens SW-230V Solar+ is only recommended for systems that are not operated as privacy screens.

- not available

09

# Combination options for patio products

										$\left  = \right $		Vning	ĕ,	132		
		/		ן <del>ב</del> ר				/	' <u>-</u> /	]ofe ]				<sup>2</sup> sign		
				<u>ا آلو</u>	8	<u> </u>	esignal a		<u> </u>   2	) 1 2			$\frac{2}{5}$	<u>م</u> / م	ן היין <del>א</del> לי היין	a/le a P
• Combinable	bac			/3			pat <sup>2</sup>	, eze	jinor /	?/?	: /J	ti lez				
	<u>م</u> /	/ Ľ	Ÿ	/ Š		6	./ Z /		/ ž	\\$_	רצו	/ Ž	/	/ ۳	/ Ē,	ہے ا
weinor BiConnect																
BiEasy 1M hand transmitter (not in combination with LED version)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
BiEasy 5M hand transmitter	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Bleasy 15M Go! hand transmitter (Ideal in combination with RGB LED light strip)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Bledsy dpp (Only Works With Bledsy DOX drid Bledsy Stick)			•	•			•	•	•				•	•	•	
BiRec MA-K (awning) receiver																
BiRec MLED (awning + lighting) receiver			•		•		•	•			•					
BiRec MVLED (awining + Ighting) receiver			•		-											
BiRec I ED (lighting) receiver													•			
RiRec RGR													-	•		
BiRec LED-48V									•							
BiRec RGB-48V																•
BiRec On Off															٠	
BiRec On/Off I (for retrofitting) internal installation													•			
BiRec HD (heating) receiver															•	
BiSens Sun-Solar sensor	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	•	•	•	•	•	•	٠				
BiSens SW 230 V sun/wind sensor	٠	٠	•	٠	٠	•	•	•	•	٠	•	٠				
BiSens SW-Solar+ sun/wind sensor	٠	٠	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•					
BiSens SWR 230V sun/wind/rain sensor	٠	•	•	•	٠	•	•	•	•	٠	٠	٠				
BiSens Agido-3V product protection sensor	٠	٠	٠	•	•	•	•									
Somfy io-homecontrol®																
Smoove 1 io Pure Shine wall transmitter	٠	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	
Situo 1 io Pure II (remote hand transmitter)	٠	•	•	•	٠	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	
Situo 5 io Pure II (remote hand transmitter)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	
Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II (remote multi-channel/sun protection controls for facade)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	
	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•		•	
Eolis WireFree Io (battery-operated remote wind sensor)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•					
EURIS SD WITEFIEE IO	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•					
Sunis where the initiation on off in (weiner version LED not dimmable)																
Awning Slim Receiver to Plug (Volant Plus, weiner PergoTex II)			•					•								
Heating Slim Receiver on for its 2KW STAS3/STAK3			-			-									•	
Somfy RTS															-	
Situo 1 RTS Pure II (1 channel)/Situo 5 RTS Pure II (5 channel) hand transmitter	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	
Situo 1 Soliris RTS Pure II (1 channel)/Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II (5 channel) hand transmitter	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	
Smoove 1 RTS Pure Shine wall transmitter	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•			
Ondeis 230V AC rain sensor	٠	٠	•	٠	٠	•	•	•	•	٠	•	•				
Eolis 3 D WireFree RTS, white (wind sensor)	٠	٠	•	٠	٠	•	•									
Eolis Sensor RTS (wireless wind sensor)	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	•	•	•		٠	٠	٠				
Soliris Sensor RTS (radio/wind/sun sensor)	٠	٠	•	٠	٠	•	•	•		•	•	•				
Soliris Sensor RTS/with rain sensor connection	٠	•	•	٠	٠	•	•	•		•	•	•				
Lighting Slim Receiver RTS Version weinor, LED not dimmable			•		•	•	•	•			•		٠			
Universal Slim Receiver RTS Plug (Valance Plus + VertiTex II)	٠					•	•					٠				
Universal external radio receiver RTS for retrofitting a wired motor drive with radio	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•				
Heating Slim Receiver RTS Plug, not dimmable															•	
Chronis RTS smart radio timer system to control the Tempura															•	
Wired control units																
Soliris Smoove Uno set with control unit	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•				
Ondeis 230V AC rain sensor	٠	٠	•	٠	٠	٠	•	•	•	•	•	•				
RGB control with integrated power supply pack 230 V														•		
Gear drives																
Gear handle	•	•	•	•	•	•					•					
Adjustment kits																
Adjustment kit with coupling element (for Becker and Somfy motor drives)	٠	•	•	٠	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•				
Test run cable incl. adjustment kit for remote-controlled and wired motor drives	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•				
(becket and soffily)			1		1	1										





#### weinor BiConnect – the high performance radio control system for outdoor living luxury

With weinor's BiConnect radio control, operating and controlling sun protection products and accessories is a breeze. Its strength shows comes into play when operating products exclusively used on the patio. BiConnect is exceptionally easy to install and to operate intuitively. As it's a local control device, there is no risk of it being hacked through the internet. The direct feedback sent via the hand transmitter immediately tells you about the device statuses. Routing technology ensures that the extra-strong radio signal is forwarded intelligently. The app allows you to operate the system through the convenience of an iPhone or iPad – without superfluous functions. Thanks to the new, simplified ordering process in weinor's E-Shop, BiConnect can be ordered without unnecessary hassle.







weinor 2021 | 09 Controls

# BiConnect configuration – at a glance





#### **BiEasy hand transmitter – secure, simple and convenient**

Sun protection, lighting and heaters can all be operated conveniently using the BiEasy 1M and 5M hand transmitters, either in silver or black.

- Secure radio transmission on 868.3 MHz radio frequency
- Bidirectional transmission
- Manual/automatic operation
- High-guality design
- Standard battery
- Visualisation via LEDs
- Magnetic wall bracket
- 1-channel wall transmitter optionally available, surface mountable



# BiEasy hand transmitter with display, and BiEasy app

If several channels are to be used (e.g. on Glasoasen®), the simplest and most convenient solution is to use a BiEasy 15M Go! hand transmitter with display or the BiEasy app.

- Coloured LED strips are easily controlled using the BiEasy 15M Go!
- Simple operation and feedback via hand transmitter display or mobile device
- 15 channels (BiEasy app: up to 30); for individual control of various products

## BiRec remote receiver (routing technology)

The BiRec remote receivers receive a signal from the BiEasy hand transmitter and forward it as a command to motor drives, lights and heaters.

- Maximum signal security thanks to routing technology
- Separate receiver for easy replacement in contrast to a remote-controlled motor
- Integrated installation optionally possible for a neat and tidy look dependent on the product



# BiSens sun/wind/rain sensors – sun and product protection at your fingertips

BiSens radio sensors provide maximum convenience. They open the awning automatically when the sun comes out and retract it in the rain and wind.

Available in the following versions:

- Sun/wind/rain sensor
- Sun/wind sensor
- Sun sensor
- Product protection sensor

#### BiConnect system overview/routing technology

#### Peace of mind through routing

The new BiConnect radio control transmits bidirectional signals and is, above all, reliable thanks to its ultramodern routing technology. In this case, the BiEasy hand transmitter sends a radio signal to an active BiRec receiver within its range. The signal is then forwarded from one receiver to the next until it reaches the target receiver – and all this occurs in a second.

#### Benefits for the user:

- Secure radio signal through routing technology even through facades with metal cladding or thick wall insulation
- Direct feedback through control function on hand transmitter
- Significantly less electronic emission than with conventional radio technology
- Protected radio frequency, no disruptions from telephones or WLAN



## BiEasy 1M, 5M and 15M Go! hand transmitter

Hand transmitter	No. of chan- nels	Functions	Recommended weinor products
BiEasy 1M	1	<ul> <li>Controls one single receiver or a group of receivers</li> <li>Extends and retracts awning, switches on and dims lighting (LED light bar) or Tempura heating system</li> <li>Extra button to switch between manual and automated operation</li> <li>LED on hand transmitter gives feedback from receiver that a command has been successfully executed</li> </ul>	Individual awning or heating or light
BiEasy 5M	5	<ul> <li>Controls 5 receivers or up to 5 groups of receivers</li> <li>Automatically combines channels 1 to 5 into a centrally-operated unit for all weinor sun protection</li> <li>Extends and retracts awning, switches on and dims lighting (LED light bar) or Tempura heating system</li> <li>Extra button to switch between manual and automated operation</li> <li>LED on hand transmitter and LED status display give feedback from receiver that a command has been successfully executed</li> </ul>	One or more awnings with light- ing and heating
BiEasy 15M Go!	15	<ul> <li>Controls up to 15 receivers</li> <li>Automatically combines channels 1 to 15 into a centrally-operated unit for all weinor sun protection</li> <li>Extra button to switch between manual and automated operation</li> <li>Menu navigated via illuminated display incorporating product-specific pictograms</li> <li>Available in 14 languages</li> <li>LED on hand transmitter and LED status on display give feedback from receiver that a positioning command has been successfully executed</li> <li>Optimised to operate RGB: dims and adjusts the colour of the weinor RGB</li> <li>Easier to operate, adapted to weinor products</li> <li>Channels can be assigned names, a suggestion appears on the display depending on the pre-programmed</li> </ul>	Glasoase® or conservatory, particularly in combination with LED, RGB Strip and Coloured LED strips

As a rule, hand transmitters are pre-programmed before leaving the factory. **Caution!** Bidirectional BiConnect hand transmitters cannot be combined with unidirectional WeiTronic products. If using hand/wall transmitters: see price list for "weinor awnings and pergola awnings".

## BiEasy 1M, 5M and 15M Go! hand transmitter



Technical data	BiEasy 1M and 5 M	BiEasy 15M Go!
Operating voltage	3 V DC	3 V DC
IP code	IP 20	IP 20
Protection class	П	П
Ambient temperature	0 to 55°C	0 to 55°C
Dimensions	120 x 51 x 26 mm	150 x 51 x 26 mm
Weight	120 g	140 g
Battery type	2 x LR 06 (AA mignon battery)	2 x LR 06 (AA mignon battery)
Radio frequency	868.3 MHz	868.3 MHz

## BiEasy wall transmitter, 1MV-3V

Wall transmitter:	Number of channels	Functions	Recommended weinor products
BiEasy 1MV-3V	1	<ul> <li>Wall transmitter to control one or more receivers</li> <li>For operation inside one room</li> <li>Easy surface-mount cable-free installation</li> <li>Manual commands such as Up, Stop, Down</li> <li>LED for transmission control</li> <li>Extra button to switch between manual and automated operation</li> </ul>	Individual awning or heating or light



Technical data	BiEasy 1MV-3V
Operating voltage	3 V DC
IP code	IP 20
Protection class	II
Ambient temperature	0 to + 50 °C
Dimensions	88 x 88 x 20 mm
Battery type	CR 2032
Battery life	2 years
Radio frequency	868.3 MHz

#### **BiRec\*** receiver



Receiver	Functions	Type of plug
BiRec MA	Awning motor drive	3 m lead, no plug attached, Hirschmann, STAK3
BiRec MA-K	Opal Design II awning motor drive, or ideal for retrofitting + service	Hirschmann, STAS 3 + STAK3
BiRec MVLED	Awning motor drive + Valance Plus motor + LED light incl. dimmer function	AMP, flat plug
BiRec MLED	Awning motor drive + LED light incl. dimmer function	AMP, flat plug
BiRec LED	LED light bar/LED Design light bar, incl. dimmer function	AMP, flat plug
BiRec LED-48V	PergoTex II LED light incl. dimming	CONI1, SuperSeal
BiRec RGB	RGB LED bar up to max. 6.5 m	AMP, JWPF
BiRec RGB-48V	Coloured LED strips up to max. 30 m (48V power supply pack required)	CONI1, JWPF
BiRec On/Off	Controls conventional products (on/off)	3 m lead, Hirschmann, STAK3
BiRec On/Off I	Controls conventional products (internal installation, on/off)	AMP
BiRec HD	Heater, including dimmer function	10 m connecting lead, Hirschmannstecker STAK3
BiRec ST	Wireless socket (on/of) for any devices up to 2,000 watts (only for use in dry rooms)	Schuko safety plug
Control	Functions	Type of plug
Control RGB with integrat- ed power supply back	Coloured LED strips up to max. 6.5 m (for hard wired switch/remote-receiver e.g. Somfy)	AMP, JWPF

\* BiRec = Bidirectional Receiver

\*\*Outside BiRec ON/OFF remote switch: other electricity consumers outside can be controlled with the remote switch, e.g. garden lights, pond pumps or plug sockets (switch on and off only).

#### **BiRec receiver**



#### Radio tapping BiRec ST

Other electricity consumers can be easily controlled with the BiRec ST wireless socket (on/off).

Technical data	BiRec ST
Power supply	230 V
Standby output	1 W (per channel)
Switching capacity	up to 2,000 W
Ambient temperature	-20 to +80 °C
Dimensions (W x H x D)	110 x 60 x 40 mm (without plug connector)
Radio frequency	868.3 MHz



BiRec name plate with item number (for ordering replacements), version number (for technical support in event of errors)



Recommended: Provide BiRec MA/HD with additional protection using the horizontally mounted design bar

Designer bar, length: 330 mm, Item number 109070-0000

**Caution!** Bidirectional BiConnect hand transmitters cannot be combined with unidirectional WeiTronic products.

#### Installation of the BiRec Receiver

Depending on the product, the receiver is mounted in the awning housing or outside the housing. The BiConnect BiRec MA/HD receivers are splash-proof in accordance with IP 56. The power feeder used depends on the combination of products ordered. In most cases, the model will include a black cable with open cable ends. In the long term, permanent cabling is required.

#### **BiSens weather sensors**



sensors	Functions	Data transmission
BiSens SWR-230V	<ul> <li>Combined sun/wind/rain sensor</li> <li>Automatically opens the awning in sunny conditions and retracts it in wind and rain</li> <li>Electricity supply via power lead</li> <li>Option to deactivate sun sensor</li> <li>LED status display for sun/wind/rain signal</li> <li>Sun/wind/rain thresholds can be set on the sensor</li> <li>Transparent housing</li> </ul>	230 V
BiSens SW-230V	<ul> <li>Sun/wind sensor</li> <li>Automatically opens awning in sunny conditions and retracts it in windy conditions</li> <li>Electricity supply via power lead</li> <li>Option to deactivate sun sensor</li> <li>LED status display for sun and wind signal</li> <li>Sun and wind thresholds can be set on sensor</li> <li>Transparent housing</li> </ul>	230 V
BiSens SW-Solar+*	<ul> <li>Sun/wind sensor</li> <li>Automatically opens awning in sunny conditions and retracts it in windy conditions</li> <li>Integrated solar cells for power supply (not suitable for awnings used as privacy shields)</li> <li>No cabling required</li> <li>Option to deactivate sun sensor</li> <li>LED status display for sun and wind signal</li> <li>Sun and wind thresholds can be set on sensor</li> <li>Transparent housing</li> </ul>	Cable-free
BiSens Sun-Solar	<ul> <li>Sun sensor</li> <li>Automatically opens the awning in sunny conditions</li> <li>Integrated solar cells for power supply</li> <li>No cabling required</li> <li>Sun thresholds can be set on sensor</li> <li>Transparent housing</li> </ul>	Cable-free
BiSens Agido	<ul> <li>Product protection sensor</li> <li>Battery-powered</li> <li>Retracts awning when vibrations and movement are detected (e.g. gusty winds)</li> <li>Housing in same RAL colour as awning system</li> </ul>	Cable-free

Caution! Bidirectional BiConnect hand transmitters cannot be combined with unidirectional WeiTronic products!

\* For sun protection systems primarily used as privacy shields, we recommend the 230V versions. The BiSens SW-230V gets enough energy even in autumn/winter to reliably guarantee the wind safety function all day long.

#### **BiSens weather sensors**

#### **BiSens SWR-230V**

Technical data	BiSens SWR-230V
Power supply	230 V AC
IP code	IP 44
Ambient temperature	-20 to +60 °C
Dimensions	205 x 125 x 105 mm
Detection angle	150°
Radio frequency	868.3 MHz

#### SW-230V, SW-Solar+ and Sun-Solar\*

Technical data	SW-230V and SW-Solar+	Sun-Solar*
Power supply	SW-Solar+: integrated solar module SW-230V: 230 V AC power supply voltage	Integrated solar module
Power reserve	≤ 12 hours (SW-Solar+ only)	~ 1 hour
IP code	IP 44	IP 44
Ambient temperature	-25 °C to +60 °C	-25 °C to +60 °C
Dimensions	280 x 130 x 130 mm	150 x 42 x 28 mm
Detection angle	150°	190°
Radio frequency	868.3 MHz	868.3 MHz



#### **BiSens Agido-3V**

Technical data	BiSens Agido-3V
Power supply	LR03 (AAA AI)
IP code	IP 54
Ambient temperature	-15°C to + 50°C
Dimensions	205 x 125 x 105 mm
Radio frequency	868.3 MHz

#### How the sensors work

A sensor can be used for one or more receivers. If different elevations are needed for each receiver, a separate sensor must be used (this is always the case for the Agido vibration sensor). Where required, additional Sun-Solar sensors may be used for each receiver (e.g. depending on compass direction), but only one SWR-230V or SW-230V/Solar+. Sensors are programmed by weinor before leaving the factory. The desired configuration can simply be speci-

fied at the time the order is placed in the weinor E-Shop.

#### \* Use of BiSens Sun-Solar

- For systems used purely for privacy protection (vertical awnings).
- In combination with a BiSens SWR 230V, which is not completely south facing. The BiSens Sun Solar then provides another sun contact.
- With a Sottezza II: This does not require wind sensors, but should react to the sun.

#### How the BiEasy kit works



# The BiEasy kit: simple and intuitive

weinor's BiEasy combines the benefits of the BiConnect bidirectional remote system with the convenient and intuitive operation by iPhone or iPad.

How it works

- 1. When you run the BiEasy app version, it connects to the BiEasy box via the router (home WiFi on site). It cannot be operated via the internet. This completely eliminates the risk of hacking.
- 2. The router and box are connected to each other by cable (LAN).
- 3. The box transmits any commands that it receives to the receiver as a bidirectional radio signal via the BiEasy stick.

#### How the BiEasy kit works



#### Important information!

The dimmer function on weinor LED light bars and Tempura heating systems are not fully available with the app. The following dimmer levels can be set: On/Off plus one intermediate level. Full dimmer capability can be accessed using the weinor BiEasy hand transmitter, as before.

BiEasy device	Function
BiEasy App	The free-of-charge BiEasy app for iPhone and iPad can be used to operate folding arm, conservatory and vertical awnings as well as LED lights and heating.
BiEasy box	The BiEasy box is incorporated into your home WiFi system. The BiEasy app connects to this box. The app and box can be used to operate all of the programmed BiRec receivers.
BiEasy Stick	The BiEasy Stick establishes a bidirectional radio connection to the BiRec receivers. The stick inserts into one of the two USB ports on the BiEasy Box. It has 15 channels.

#### BiEasy app – operation is child's play

The BiEasy app can be downloaded free of charge from the relevant stores. With 15 channels, the BiEasy Stick is easy to operate. Pre-programmed devices are displayed automatically and with an icon and can be renamed. The clearly marked icons on the app make operation child's play. Individual scenarios can be saved and retrieved for enhanced experience. Several users can be created. This allows various smartphones or tablets to have access to the devices at the same time (only for Apple devices).

## **BiEasy Box and Stick**



#### Easy to use, easy to connect

The box comes with two USB ports to accommodate one BiEasy stick each. Each stick has 15 channels plus function keys for changing channels, programming as well as for up/down and brighten/dim functions.

The power is connected using an Schuko plug adapter or by means of the supplied power cable. The device is connected to the network on the WiFi router by means of the integrated RJ-45 port. The BiEasy box is only compatible with weinor receivers and sensors.







# Somfy io-homecontrol®





# Somfy io-homecontrol<sup>®</sup> – for a fully-automated home

The Somfy io-homecontrol® remote control system is not just a convenient means of operating textile sun protection products; its radio technology with reconfirmation also makes it possible to incorporate weinor products into one complete home technology system. io-homecontrol® allows every convenience and security feature to be combined into one network and be controlled using a single remote transmitter. The expandable system can also incorporate any new products that are added.



## Somfy io-homecontrol® radio controller

# Somfy io-homecontrol<sup>®</sup> hand transmitter



Hand transmitter	Number of channels	Functions	Recommended weinor products
Situo 1 io Pure II	1	<ul> <li>Remote hand transmitter to operate one awning</li> <li>Up, Down and Stop key</li> <li>"my" favourite position (e.g. ideal position for shade)</li> </ul>	One awning One light bar
Situo 5 io Pure II	5	<ul> <li>Multichannel remote hand transmitter to operate several awnings or one awning with lighting and heating or lighting and Valance Plus</li> <li>Up, Down and Stop key</li> <li>"my" favourite position (e.g. ideal position for shade)</li> </ul>	One or more awnings with lighting
Situo 5 Variation A/M io Pure II	5	<ul> <li>Bidirectional multi-channel remote transmitter for operation of several awnings or one awning with lighting</li> <li>Up, Down and Stop key</li> <li>Automatic sun control adjustable</li> <li>"my" favourite position (e.g. ideal position for shade)</li> </ul>	One or more awnings with lighting

Technical data	Situo 1/5/5 Variation A/M io Pure II
Operating voltage	3 V DC
IP code	IP 30
Ambient temperature	0 °C to + 48 °C
Battery type	CR 2430
Ambient conditions	dry living space
Radio frequency	868.25 MHz

The Somfy io-homecontrol<sup>®</sup> (868.25 – 869.85 MHz) system is not compatible with BiConnect (868.3 MHz) products!

# Somfy io-homecontrol<sup>®</sup> wall transmitter

Wall transmitter:	Number of channels	Functions	Recommended weinor products
Smoove 1 io Pure Shine	1	<ul> <li>Kit: radio module and frame in same colour as Pure Shine</li> <li>Remote wall transmitter to operate one awning</li> <li>Innovative operation using touch keys</li> <li>Up, Down and Stop key</li> <li>"my" favourite position (e.g. ideal position for shade)</li> <li>Battery level indicator</li> </ul>	Individual awnings



Technical data	Smoove 1 io
Operating voltage	3V DC
IP code	IP 30
Ambient temperature	0°C to + 60°C
Dimensions (WxHxD)	module with 80 x 80 x 10 mm frame
Battery type	CR 2430
Radio frequency	868.25 MHz
Ambient conditions	dry living space

# Somfy Connexoon

io control unit	Number of channels	Functions	Recommended weinor products
Connexoon	40	<ul> <li>Bidirectional smart io control to operate networked products using a smartphone or tablet (terrace application must be installed)</li> <li>4 favourite positions/scenes can be saved</li> <li>1 status enquiry can be retrieved</li> <li>Adjustable automatic sun protection (4 per sensor)</li> <li>Wind protection status info can be retrieved</li> <li>Control and status feedback in the application</li> <li>Internet access by LAN connection required</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Awning with io drive</li> <li>Lighting in the awning (ON/OFF)</li> <li>io Sunis</li> <li>one or more awnings with lighting, other compatible io products on the patio (you can get a current list of compatible products from Somfy)</li> <li>Phillips hue lamp (1 gateway) (not available from weinor)</li> </ul>



Technical data	Connexoon
Operating voltage	5V
IP code	IP 30
Ambient temperature	0°C to + 60°C
Dimensions (WxHxD)	approx. 100 x 50 x 50 mm
Battery type	not necessary
Radio frequency	868.25 MHz
Ambient conditions	dry living space



Awning Slim Receiver io Plug

Heating Slim Receiver on/off io

Receiver	Functions	Type of plug
Lighting Receiver Variation on/off io	<ul> <li>Bidirectional remote receiver to switch various types of light sources up to 500 W on and off (light bulbs, halogen or LED lamps)</li> <li>Not dimmable</li> <li>Feedback whether the connected product has been switched on or off</li> </ul>	АМР Тусо
Awning Slim Receiver io Plug	<ul><li>Remote receiver with integrated automatic wind/sun protection</li><li>To control the Valance Plus and weinor PergoTex II</li></ul>	Hirschmann, STAS3 + STAK3
Heating Slim Receiver on/off io 2KW	<ul> <li>Radio receiver for use with weinor heaters for on/off control only in combination with a Somfy RTS hand transmitter</li> <li>Not dimmable</li> <li>up ro 2,000 W</li> </ul>	Hirschmann, STAS3 + STAK3

Technical data	Lighting Receiver Variation on/off io	Heating Slim Receiver on/off io 2KW	Awning Slim Receiver io Plug
Operating voltage	230 V AC ~ 50 Hz	230 V ~ 50 Hz	230 V ~ 50 Hz
Operating temperature	-20°C to +60°C	-20 °C to +50 °C	-30 °C to +70 °C
IP code	IP 55	IP 54	IP 54
Protection class	Ш	Ш	Ш
Switch contact rating for relay	max. 500 W	2,000 W	3A cos phi > 0.6
Dimensions (WxHxD)	92 x 43 x 28 mm	131 x 32 x 33 mm	131 x 32 x 33 mm
Radio frequency	868.00 – 870.00 MHz	868.25 – 869.85 MHz	868.25 – 869.85 MHz

# Somfy io-homecontrol® radio controller

# Somfy io-homecontrol® sensors

Sensors Functions		Data transmission	
		Connection	Wireless re- mote sensor
Eolis WireFree io	<ul> <li>Bidirectional remote wind sensor to protect one or more awnings from damage caused by winds</li> <li>Battery-operated sensor</li> <li>Wind threshold can be set on sensor</li> </ul>	—	yes
Sunis WireFree io II	<ul> <li>Bidirectional remote sun sensor to control one or more awnings depending on the brightness of the sun</li> <li>Sun threshold can be set with Easy Sun io or TaHoma</li> <li>Battery-operated sensor for facade</li> </ul>	—	yes
Eolis 3D WireFree io	<ul> <li>Automatic control of folding arm awning depending on wind load</li> <li>Easy to set the vibration threshold</li> <li>Battery-operated sensor</li> </ul>	_	yes

Technical data	Eolis WireFree io	Sunis WireFree io II	Eolis 3D WireFree io
Operating voltage	3 V DC	3 V DC	3 V DC
IP code	IP 44	IP 34	IP 44
Operating temperature	-20°C to +60°C	-20 °C to +60 °C	-20°C to +60°C
Battery type	Mignon AA	Mignon AA	Alkaline AAA
Setting range for winds	10 – 65 km/h	-	-
Measurement range for brightness	-	50 – 100 kLux	50 – 100 kLux
Dimensions (WxHxD)	216 x 95 mm	78 x 78 x 37/26 mm	38 x 25 x 153 mm
Radio frequency	868.25 – 869.85 MHz	868.25 – 869.85 MHz	868.25 – 869.85 MHz

# Somfy RTS radio control





Radio Technology Somfy



# Somfy RTS – the tried-and-tested standard solution for patios

Somfy RTS is recommended for everyone who has had a positive experience with this radio control system and therefore wants to stick with it. Being an older Somfy system, RTS does not offer many high-tech features. It is nevertheless a good and tried-and-tested standard means of controlling patio products – from sun protection systems, to LED lights and heaters. Important: Since RTS works unidirectionally, no feedback is given on the status of the units. The radio control system runs on a frequency of 433.42 MHZ.

## Somfy RTS radio control

# Somfy RTS hand transmitter



Hand transmitter	Number of channels	Functions	Recommended weinor products
Situo 1 RTS Pure II	1	<ul> <li>Remote hand transmitter to operate one awning</li> <li>Up, Down and Stop key</li> <li>"my" favourite position (e.g. ideal position for shade)</li> </ul>	One awning One light bar
Situo 5 RTS Pure II	5	<ul> <li>Multichannel remote hand transmitter to operate several awnings or one awning with lighting and heating or lighting and Valance Plus</li> <li>Up, Down and Stop key</li> <li>"my" favourite position (e.g. ideal position for shade)</li> </ul>	One or more awnings with lighting and heating
Situo 1 Soliris RTS Pure II	1	<ul> <li>Remote hand transmitter to operate one awning</li> <li>Up, Down and Stop key</li> <li>"my" favourite position (e.g. ideal position for shade)</li> <li>Button to switch auto sun protection mode on and off</li> </ul>	One awning
Situo 5 Soliris RTS Pure II	5	<ul> <li>Multichannel remote hand transmitter to operate several awnings, lighting and heating</li> <li>Up, Down and Stop key</li> <li>"my" favourite position (e.g. ideal position for shade)</li> <li>Button to switch auto sun protection mode on and off</li> </ul>	Glasoase <sup>®</sup> or conservatory

As a rule, hand transmitters are
supplied pre-programmed. The
Somfy RTS (433.42 Mhz) system is
not compatible with the BiConnect
(868.3 Mhz) products!

Technical data	Situo 1/5 RTS Pure II, Situo 1/5 Soliris RTS Pure II
Operating voltage	3 V DC
IP code for housing	IP 30
Ambient conditions	Dry living space
Dimensions	41 x 134 x 21 mm
Battery type	CR 2430
Operating temperature	0 °C to + 48 °C
Radio frequency	433.42 MHz

# Somfy RTS wall transmitter



Wall transmitter:	Number of channels	Functions	Recommended weinor products
Smoove 1 RTS Pure Shine	1	<ul> <li>Kit: radio module and Pure frame</li> <li>Remote wall transmitter to operate one awning</li> <li>Innovative operation using touch keys</li> <li>Up, Down and Stop key</li> <li>"my" favourite position (e.g. ideal position for shade)</li> <li>Battery level indicator</li> </ul>	One awning
Chronis RTS smart	1	<ul> <li>Wireless timer system to operate and control RTS products</li> </ul>	Tempura heating system

Technical data	Smoove 1 RTS Pure Shine	Chronis RTS smart
Operating voltage	3 V DC	2x 1.5 V DC
Operating temperature	0 °C to + 60 °C	+ 5°C to + 40°C
Ambient conditions	dry living space	dry living space
IP code for housing	IP 30	IP 30
Dimensions (WxHxD)	module with 80 x 80 x 10 mm frame	module with 80 x 80 x 27 mm frame
Battery type	CR 2430	Micro AAA
Radio frequency	433.42 MHz	433.42 MHz

The Somfy RTS (433 Mhz) system is not compatible with BiConnect (868.3 Mhz) products.

## Somfy RTS radio control

## Somfy RTS receiver



Receiver Functions Type of plug • Remote receiver to switch halogen and LED lights on and off Lighting Slim Receiver RTS АМР Тусо • Up to 500 W Heating Slim Receiver RTS Plug • Remote receiver to switch electric radiant heaters on and off Hirschmann, • Not dimmable STAS3 + STAK • Up to 2,000 W **Universal Slim Receiver RTS Plug** • Remote receiver with integrated automatic wind/sun protection to Hirschmann, control the Valance Plus and VertiTex II STAS3 + STAK3

Technical data	Lighting Slim Receiver RTS	Heating Slim Receiver RTS Plug	Universal Slim Receiver RTS Plug
Operating voltage	230 V ~ 50 Hz	230 V ~ 50 Hz	230 V ~ 50 Hz
Operating temperature	-30 °C to +70 °C	-20 °C to + 50 °C	-30 °C to + 70 °C
IP code for housing	IP 54	IP 54	IP 54
Switch contact rating	500 W	2,000 W	3A cos phi > 0.6
Number of RTS remote transmitters that can be registered	12	12	12
Dimensions (WxHxD)	105 x 32 x 33 mm	131 x 32 x 33 mm	131 x 32 x 33 mm
Radio frequency	433.42 MHz	433.42 MHz	433.42 MHz

## Somfy RTS radio control

# Somfy RTS sensors



sensors	Functions	Connection
Eolis Sensor RTS	<ul> <li>Remote wind sensor to protect one or more awnings from damage caused by winds</li> <li>Wireless communication with the radio control and/or remote receiver</li> <li>Wind threshold can be set on sensor</li> <li>LED display indicates when wind threshold has been exceeded</li> </ul>	230 V
Soliris Sensor RTS	<ul> <li>Remote wind/sun sensor to protect one or more awnings from damage caused by winds and to adjust on one or more depending on the brightness of the sun</li> <li>Wireless communication with the radio control and/or remote receiver</li> <li>Wind and sun threshold can be set on sensor</li> <li>LED display indicates when wind/sun threshold has been exceeded</li> </ul>	230 V
Eolis 3D WireFree RTS	<ul> <li>Automatic control of folding arm awning depending on wind load</li> <li>Easy to set the vibration threshold</li> <li>Battery-operated sensor</li> </ul>	—

Technical data	Eolis Sensor RTS	Soliris Sensor RTS	Eolis 3D WireFree RTS
Operating voltage	220 – 240 V ~ 50/60 Hz	220 – 240 V ~ 50/60 Hz	2 x 1.5 V
Operating temperature	-20°C to +50°C	-20°C to +50°C	-20°C to + 60°C
Battery type	-	-	Alkaline AAA
IP code for housing	IP 34	IP 34	IP 44
Protection class	Ш	Ш	П
Measurement range for brightness	-	0 – 50 kLux	0 – 50 kLux
Setting range for winds	10 – 50 km/h	10 – 50 km/h	10 – 50 km/h
Dimensions (WxH)	236 x 160 mm	236 x 160 mm	38 x 25 x 153 mm
Radio frequency	433.42 MHz	433.42 MHz	433.42 MHz

# Wired control units





#### Wired control units – fast, easy, tried and tested

Awnings, heating and lighting can, of course, also be conveniently regulated using a Somfy wall switch. The advantage of this solution is that you not only avoid having to hunt around for misplaced hand transmitters, but there is also no need to change any batteries. A wall switch is quite simply available all of the time – having been used hundreds of thousands of times, it has proven itself over the years.
### Wired control units

## Overview



Soliris Smoove Uno + control unit

Ondeis rain sensor

Systems	Functions	Connection
Soliris Smoove Uno	<ul> <li>Sun and wind sensor (Soliris Smoove uno) with control unit</li> <li>Control unit for manual control of a drive</li> <li>Innovative operation using touch keys</li> <li>LED wind or rain alarm display</li> <li>Automatic sun control can be switched on/off</li> <li>Sturdy insertable frame for fast and easy installation</li> <li>Insertable frame can be fitted to flush box</li> </ul>	230 V
Ondeis 230V AC rain sensor	<ul> <li>Capacitive sensor measures levels of rain and snowfall</li> <li>Can be combined with any control unit with an input for potential-free sensors</li> <li>Integrated self-regulating heating</li> </ul>	230 V

Technical data	Smoove Uno
Operating voltage	230 V AC
Operating temperature	0 °C to + 45 °C
Ambient conditions	Dry living space
IP code	IP 20
Protection class	II
Output voltage	230 V AC
Output current	3.15 A
Dimensions (WxHxD)	module with 80 x 80 x 41 mm frame

Technical data	Ondeis rain sensor
Operating voltage	100 – 230 V AC, 50/60 Hz
Operating temperature	-20 °C to + 60 °C
IP code for housing	IP 44
Protection class	П
max. heating capacity	< 4 W
Dimensions (WxHxD)	115 x 85 x 100 mm





weinor 2021 | 09 Controls





# Electric motor drives – powerful and invisible

Electric drive motors handle the infinitely variable opening and retracting of folding arm awnings, conservatory awnings and vertical sun protection. They are durable and require no maintenance. A number of models are available to cover specific requirements – depending on the manufacturer, they come with or without integrated remote receiver. The drive is always installed at weinor's factory prior to dispatch.

## Drive motors for weinor awnings



weinor uses a variety of drive motors depending on the patio product in question. These come from Becker, Somfy or elero and are installed into the roller tube by weinor. For installation purposes, they can be fitted with an adjustment cable, which can be ordered from weinor.

#### Somfy Orea 50/60 RTS electronic radio motor

Technical data	Orea 50 RTS				Orea 60 RTS							
	6/17	15/17	20/17	25/17	30/17	40/17	50/12	55/17	70/17	85/17	100/12	120/12
Nominal voltage/ Frequency		230 V/50 Hz										
Mark of conformity		VDE										
IP code		IP 44										
Nominal torque	6	15	20	25	30	40	50	55	70	85	100	120
Nominal speed (rpm)			1	17			12		17		1	2
Power consumption (W)	90	140	160	170	240	270	240	290	350	400	350	400
Duty cycle (min.)	4											
Weight/mass (kg)	1.85	2.12	2.22	2.34	2.5	2.85	2.59	4.18	4.5	4.7	4.82	5.03
Number of cable strands	3											

#### Somfy Orea 50/60 WT electronic motor

Technical data	Orea 50 WT Orea60 WT							
	25/17	40/17	55/17	70/17	85/17	100/12	120/12	
Nominal voltage/ Frequency		230 V/50 Hz						
Mark of conformity		VDE						
IP code		IP 44						
Nominal torque	25	40	55	70	85	100	120	
Nominal speed (rpm)		17 12					2	
Power consumption (W)	170	270	290	350	400	350	400	
Duty cycle (min.)	4							
Weight/mass (kg)	2.2	2.8	4.39	4.82	5.03	4.82	5.03	
Number of cable strands		4						

09

## Drive motors for weinor awnings

#### Somfy Sunea 50/60 io electronic, bidirectional radio motor

Technical data	Sunea 40 io	io Sunea 50 io Sunea 60								
	13/10	25/17	30/17	40/17	50/12	55/17	70/17	85/17	100/12	120/12
Nominal voltage/Frequency		230 V/50 Hz								
Mark of conformity					VD	E				
IP code		IP 44								
Nominal torque	13	25	30	40	50	55	70	85	100	120
Nominal speed (rpm)	10		17		12		17		1	2
Power consumption (W)	110	170	240	270	240	290	350	400	350	400
Duty cycle (min.)					4					
Weight/mass (kg)	1.28	2.2	2.55	2.8	2.59	4.18	4.5	4.7	4.82	5.03
Number of cable strands		3								
Max. number of programmable io remote transmitters and io sensors		9								



Somfy Sunea

# elero SunTop/RolTop electronic, bidirectional radio drive, compatible with BiConnect

Technical data		SunTop M	SunTop L	RolTop S/ SunTop- 868 S12	
	20-868	40-868	50-868	80-868	12-868
Nominal voltage/Frequency	230 V/ 50 Hz	230 V/ 50 Hz	230 V /50 Hz	230 V/ 50 Hz	230 V/ 50 Hz
Mark of conformity	CE, VDE, VDE EMC	CE, VDE, VDE EMC	CE, VDE, VDE EMC	CE	CE, VDE, VDE EMC
IP code	IP 44	IP 44	IP 44	IP 44	IP 44
Nominal torque (Nm)	20	40	50	80	12
Nominal current (A)	0.9	1.2	1.3	2	0.73
Nominal speed (rpm)	14	14	14	14	17
Power consumption (W)	200	270	300	470	168
Duty cycle (min.)	4	5	4	4	4
Weight/mass (kg)	2.2	2.6	3.1	3.6	1.3
Number of cable strands	4	4	4	4	4



SunTop M

## Drive motors for weinor awnings



#### Universal sun protection drives with electronic end switch

Technical data	R12-17-E12	R20-17-E12	R30-17-E12	R40-17-E12	R50-11-E12	L50-17-E12	L80-11-E12
Nominal voltage (V)	230	230	230	230	230	230	230
Frequency (Hz)	50	50	50	50	50	50	50
Mark of conformity	VDE						
IP code	IP44						
Nominal torque (Nm)	12	20	30	40	50	50	80
Nominal current (A)	0.5	0.75	0.9	1.15	1.1	1.4	1.4
Nominal speed (rpm)	17	17	17	17	11	17	11
Power consumption (W)	110	160	205	260	240	315	310
Operating mode	S2 4 minutes						
Number of cable strands	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
Cross-section of strand (mm <sup>2</sup> )	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75

## Drive motors for weinor awnings



#### Tubular drive with electronic torque limiter Becker P9/16PS

Technical data	P9/16PS
Nominal voltage/ Frequency	230 V/50 Hz
Mark of conformity	VDE
IP code	IP 44
Nominal torque	9
Nominal current (A)	0.47
Nominal speed (rpm)	16
Power consumption (W)	110
Operating mode	S2 4 min.
Number of cable strands	4
Cross-section of strand (mm <sup>2</sup> )	0.75

#### **Examples of adaptors**



Adaptor for Opti grooved shaft (e.g. Opal Design II)



Universal adapter (e.g. Semina)

# **Gear drives**





# Gear drive – fundamentally simple and inexpensive

weinor gear drives are simple, stable and permanently installed. This inexpensive solution for operating awnings can be used at any time. Although a gear drive does not offer the same full operating convenience of other solutions, it is exceptionally reliable: when combined, a gear handle and gear drive are highly effective. The inconspicuous gear handle blends in with the overall look of the product, is removable and can be hung using a clip. It is available in standard lengths of between 80 and 280 cm.

#### **Gear drives**

### Freewheel gear with infinitely adjustable end positions



weinor uses different Geiger gearboxes for the main drive of awnings depending on the projection and width.\*

\* Subject to change

Systems	Geiger 412F5 Standard	Geiger 412F5 reinforced
Functions	<ul><li>Integrated end stop system</li><li>Freewheel when open</li></ul>	Used on larger-sized awnings

Technical data	Geiger 412F5 Standard	Geiger 412F5 reinforced
Reduction ratio	4.4:1	4.4:1
Efficiency	0.61	0.61

Colours	White	Black	Grey	Galvanised
Gear drive	•	•	•	•
Gear handle	•	•	•	•

Standard

#### How the freewheel system works

Once the end position has been reached, an innovative freewheel system triggers an acoustic alarm. This tells the user that the end position has been reached and that the awning cannot open any further. The awnings system is thus protected from operating error, and there is no risk of the gear drive being damaged. The awning's end position can be adjusted at any time using the integrated end stop system. The end position can only be adjusted by loosening the Allen screw, which can be accessed from the outside. There is no need to dismantle the gear drive or awning roller. This saves employees time when adjusting the end position.

## Gear drives

## Gear without free wheel



Systems	Geiger bevel gear 412F7	Geiger worm gear 414F
Functions	<ul> <li>Without free wheel</li> <li>Fast and smooth-running</li> <li>Is inserted directly into the roller tube (on Topas without roof)</li> </ul>	<ul><li>Without free wheel</li><li>Maximum performance with minimal gear size</li><li>Is inserted directly into the roller tube</li></ul>

Technical data	Geiger bevel gear 412F7 (Topas without roof)	Geiger bevel gear 411F (Sottezza II)	Geiger worm gear 414F (Valance Plus)
Reduction ratio	4.4:1	7.8:1	3:1
Efficiency	0.6	0.5	0.4

## Notes

	-	-	-			-			-	-	-		-		-	-	-		-	-	-			-	-			-	-	-	-	-	-	-
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•••	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	·
•	•	•	·	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	·	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•	•	•	·	•	·	•	• •	•	•	•	•	·	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	·	• •	•	•	·	·	•	•	•	•	•	-	•
																•																		
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	·	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	·	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•		•	•	•		•		•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	• •		•		•			•	•	•		•		•	•		
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•••	•	•	•	•	•••	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	-	•
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	·	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	·	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	·	•	•	•
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•••	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•	•	·	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	·	·	·	•	•	•	•	• •	•	·	•	•	•••	•	·	•	•	•	•	·	·	•	•	·
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•	-	•	•	•	•	•			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •		•	•	•			•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•••	•	•	•	•	•••	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	-	•	·	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	·	•	•	• •	•	•	·	•	•	•	•	·	•	•	·
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	·	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	·	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	·	•••	•	•	•	·	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•••	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	· ·	•	•	•	•	· ·	•		•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•
•	•		•	•				• •	•		•	•		•		•		· ·	•	•	•	•	· ·	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•
• • •			•	• • •		• • •	• •	• •	· •	•		• • •	• • •		- ·	•	• • •	· · ·		• •			  		• •		• •	• • •		• • •	• •		• • •	
• • •	• • •	• • •	•			• • •		  	· •	· •		• • •	• • •		• •	· •		· · ·	•	• • •		• • •	· ·	•	•	• • •	• • •	• • •	• • •	• • •	•	• • •	• • •	• • •
	- - -	• • •			• • •		•	  	· ·	· •				•	- ·	• •		· ·	• • •			• • •	• • • • • •	• • •	• • •			• • •	•	•		• • •		
			• • •	• • •	• • •		•	• • • •	· ·	· •				• • •	• • •	· ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	- - -			•	· · ·	• • •	• • •			• • •		• • •		• • •		
			• • • •			• • • •	• • •	  	· •	· -			• • • •	• • • •	- · ·	• • • • • • • •		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		• • • •		• • •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • •	• • • •			• • • •	• • •			• • •	• • • •	
•	• • • •					• • • •	•	· · ·	· •	· -					- · ·	· •	• • • •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		• • • •	• • • •	• • •	· · ·	• • • •	• • • •							• • • •	• • • •	· · ·
• • • •	- - - -				• • • •		• • • •	· · ·	· · ·						- · ·	· • •		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·					· · ·						- - - -			• • • •	- - - -	· · ·
• • • •	• • • • •				• • • •		• • • •	· · ·	· · ·					• • • •	- · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		• • • • •	• • • • •	- - - -	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • •			• • • • •		- - - - -			• • • • •	• • • • •	· · · ·
· · ·	•	• • • • •		• • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	· · ·	· · ·			· · ·		• • • • •				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · ·	· · · ·		• • • • •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				• • • • •	· · · ·	- - - - -		· · · ·	· · · ·	• • • • •	· · · ·
• • • • •	•	• • • • • •	• • • • • • •		•		• • • • •	· · ·	· • •			· · · ·		• • • •	- · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				- - - -	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · ·	• • • • •	- - - - -	· · ·	• • • • •	· · · ·	• • • • • •	· · ·	· · · ·
• • • • • • •	· · · · ·	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • •	· · · ·	· · · ·	- - - - - -	•	· · ·	· · ·		· · · ·	· · · ·	· · · ·	· · · ·				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				- - - - - -	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · ·	· · · ·	· · · ·	· · · ·	• • • • • • • •	· · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · ·	· · · ·
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • • • •	· · ·	· · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · ·	• • • • • • • •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · ·	• • • • • • • • •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		• • • • • • • •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · ·	· · · ·
• • • • • • • •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · ·	· · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•	· · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · ·	· · · ·	• • • • • • • •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · ·	· · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • •	· · · · · · · · ·	· · · ·	· · · ·
· · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • • • • •		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · ·	· · · ·
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	••••••	••••••	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • • • • • •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • • • • • •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· ·	· · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•••••••••••	• • • • • • • • • •	· · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · ·
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		•••••	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· ·	· · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • • • • • • •			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · ·
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		•••••	· · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · ·	· · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • • • • • • •	· · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · ·	· · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · ·	••••••	• • • • • • • • • • •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · ·	· · · · ·
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · ·	· · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · ·	••••••	•••••••	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · ·	· · · · ·
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • • • • • • • • •		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • • • • • • • •		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · ·
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · ·
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·						· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • • • • • • • • •					· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·					· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · ·
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·						· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·					· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · ·
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·					· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·					· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · ·
				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·						· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·					· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·					· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·						· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·					· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·						· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·						· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·					· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·						· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·						· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·								· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·					· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·						· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·								· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·					· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·						· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

weinor GmbH & Co. KG Mathias-Brüggen-Straße 110 50829 Cologne, Germany www.weinor.com



Awning

**AWNINGS** 



with Valance Plus and Tempura



Awning with Valance Plus and Paravento



Pergola awning Plaza Viva and Paravento

**PERGOLA AWNINGS** 

# CUSTOMISED, SYSTEMISED SOLUTIONS

weinor

Premium quality made in Germany

Pergola awning weinor PergoTex II and Tempura

#### **PATIO ROOFS** AND GLASOASE®



Glasoase<sup>®</sup> with conservatory awning WGM Top and full glass sliding door w17 easy



Terrazza Pure patio roof with lateral SUPER LITE fixed glazing



Terrazza Originale patio roof with Sottezza II sun protection



weinor PergoTex II with VertiTex II

Pergola awning

